**DOES GOD EXIST**

**By Harmanjit Singh Saini**

January 25, 2019

[Unless otherwise stated, the King James Version (KJV) of the Bible has been for reference, but common modern words such as you for ‘thou’, ‘thee’ and ‘ye’ have been used, so that readers not familiar with the KJV Bible may find it easier to read.  Mostly the New King James Version (NKJV) translation has been used as an alternate]

Some time in their lives, most humans ponder the most fundamental question of life: “Why was I born?”, or “What is the purpose of human life?” Inevitably, most realize that the answer to that question depends on the answer to another related question: “Does God Exist?”

If God does not exist, then life does not appear to have any purpose other than to live it out as you want, pursuing your own pleasure, or whatever else you fancy. When you die, that’s the end of your story. But if God exists, then we are forced to acknowledge the need to know if He has created us and to determine whether He has a purpose for our lives. If He has a purpose for our lives, then we need to fulfill it, or there might be consequences; and we need to know what those consequences will be. If He exists, and has created us, but for no purpose, then it is irrelevant whether He exists or not. Either way, if we want to find the purpose for human life, it is critical for us to know if God exists.

Data indicate that belief in God has been declining in the past few decades, particularly in the Christian world. What caused this trend, and when did it start? This trend started with the advent of the theory of evolution which provided an explanation for the existence of creation without a Creator. But is evolution true, or is creation true? This book explores that related question.

Many state that they will believe in God when they see Him. So another important question is: “If God exists, then why doesn’t He show Himself?” This book answers that question as well, among many others, including what God has planned for mankind, and His plan to accomplish it.

If you are a seeker after the truth, prepare to be thrilled.

CONTENTS

Introduction

Chapter 1 – Opinions of Famous Pioneers Of Science

Chapter 2 – Propaganda Campaign to Deny God Exists

Chapter 3 – Proof # 1 - Prophecies Before Noah’s Flood

Chapter 4 – Proof # 2 - Prophecies After the Flood

Chapter 5 – Man’s Ancient History in Brief

Chapter 6 – Proof # 3(a) - Prophecies - God’s Promises to Abraham

Chapter 7 – Proof # 3(b) - Prophecies Fulfilled by Americans and Britons

Chapter 8 – Proof # 3(c) - Prophecies - God of all Humanity

Chapter 9 – Proof # 3(d) - Prophecies - God Controls Daily Affairs of Humans

Chapter 10 – Proof # 3(e) - Prophecies About the Messiah Fulfilled

Chapter 11 – Proof # 3(f) - Prophecies Fulfilled in Our Times

Chapter 12 – Proof # 4 - God Protects Under All Circumstances

Chapter 13 – Proof # 5 - Existence of the Spirit World

Chapter 14 – Why Doesn’t God Show Himself

Chapter 15 – Prepare to Meet the True God

Chapter 16 – Answers to Some Important Questions

Suggested Reading

DOES GOD EXIST?

**Introduction**

Some time in their lives, most humans ponder the most fundamental question of life: “Why was I born?”, or “What is the purpose of human life?” Inevitably, most realize that the answer to that question depends on the answer to another related question: “Does God Exist?”

If God does not exist, then life does not appear to have any purpose other than to live it out as you want, pursuing your own pleasure, or whatever else you fancy. When you die, that’s the end of your story. But if God exists, then we are forced to acknowledge the need to know if He has created us and to determine whether He has a purpose for our lives. If He has a purpose for our lives, then we need to fulfill it, or there might be consequences; and we need to know what those consequences will be. If He exists, and has created us, but for no purpose, then it is irrelevant whether He exists or not. Either way, if we want to find the purpose for human life, it is critical for us to know if God exists.

Data on the percent of people in various countries who believe in God or a Supreme Being are not very reliable. The responses depend on the way the questions are asked on a survey. But here are one set of data based on a survey limited to 23 countries done in 2010, reported at www.Statista.com on the global share of people who believe in God or a Supreme Being by country:

Indonesia   93%     Turkey    91%        Brazil        84%     S.Africa    83        Mexico    78

USA         70 Argentina    62       Russia     56           India         56        Poland      51

Italy         50         Canada    46 Hungary 29 Spain 28 Germany 27

U.K. 25        Belgium 20 France 19 Sweden 18 S. Korea 18 China. 9 Japan. 4

OVERALL     45%

These data indicate that people in Muslim and Catholic Christian countries believe in the existence of a Supreme Being in much larger numbers. Belief in God in Europe has been steadily declining. Countries in which religion is not based on the existence of God have the lowest percentage of people who believe in God. That includes Korea, China and Japan. The rest of the world is somewhere in between. Overall, there has been a declining trend in belief in God in the world.

What caused this trend, and when did it start?

We may be tempted to believe that this trend started due to advances in science and the industrial revolution which led mankind to believe that it no longer needed to be superstitious as there is a scientific/rational explanation for everything, and that it did not need to believe in God as science can solve all its problems. But that would be far from the truth.

The earliest most famous scientists in the world during the Renaissance period (14th to 17th centuries) and the Age of Enlightenment (between 1685-1815) who pioneered the most important fields of scientific study in their days were ardent believers in God, more so because of their scientific discoveries. As they made more discoveries, they increasingly saw the awesome handiwork of God in His creation and marveled at it. Their faith in God increased.

In the next chapter, we will learn the views of the pioneering, most famous scientists in the world on God.

DOES GOD EXIST?

CHAPTER 1

**OPINIONS OF FAMOUS PIONEERS OF SCIENCE**

Here are the views of the most famous scientists in the world, all pioneers in their respective fields of science.

**Nicholas Copernicus (1473-1543)**

Copernicus was the Polish astronomer and mathematician who proposed a model of the universe that placed the Sun at the center of the universe rather than the Earth.

“Through steady observation and a meaningful contact with the divine order of the world’s structure, arranged by God’s wisdom, who would not be guided to admire the Builder who creates all!” (As quoted in “Life and Doctrine: How the Truth and Grace of Christian Story Change Everything” by Adam Mary p. 17)

“To know the mighty works of God, to comprehend His wisdom and majesty and power; to appreciate, in degree, the wonderful workings of His laws, surely all this must be a pleasing and acceptable mode of worship to the Most High, to whom ignorance cannot be more grateful than knowledge.” (As quoted in Poland: The Knight Among Nations (1907) by Louis E. Van Norman, p. 290; also in The Language of God (2006) by Francis Collins, pp. 230-31

**Sir Francis Bacon (1561-1627)**

Francis Bacon was known as the founder of the scientific method. In his book Advancement of Learning, Bacon wrote:

“God has, in fact, written two books, not just one. Of course, we are all familiar with the first book he wrote, namely Scripture. But he has written a second book called creation.

“One book is the Bible: The Book of God's Words. The other book is Nature: The Book of God's Works.”

“There are two books laid before us to study, to prevent our falling into error: first, the volume of the Scriptures, which reveal the will of God; then the volume of the Creatures, which express His power.” (As quoted in “America's God and Country: Encyclopedia of Quotations”, William J. Federer, William Joseph Federer - 1994, p.32).

“They that deny a God destroy man's nobility, for certainly man is of kin to the beasts by his body; and if he be not of kin to God by his spirit, he is a base and ignoble creature. “(Essays).

In an essay on Atheism Bacon wrote:

“God never wrought miracle to convince atheism, because his ordinary works convince it. It is true, that a little philosophy inclineth man’s mind to atheism; but depth in philosophy bringeth men’s minds about to religion. For while the mind of man looketh upon second causes scattered, it may sometimes rest in them, and go no further; but when it beholdeth the chain of them, confederate and linked together, it must needs fly to Providence and Deity.”

**Johannes Kepler (1571-1630)**

Kepler was a pious German Lutheran mathematician and astronomer, famous for discovering the laws of planetary motion. Here are his views on God and the universe:

“I propose to show that God, in creating the universe and arranging the spheres, had in view the five regular solids of geometry, and fixed by their dimensions the number, proportions and motions of the spheres” (As Quoted in "The Discovery of Kepler's Laws," Scientific American: Supplement (Apr 29, 1911) Vol. 71, No. 1843, p. 278.

“Geometry is unique and eternal, a reflection of the mind of God. That men are able to participate in it is one of the reasons why man is an image of God. (As quoted in Epilogue, The Sleepwalkers: A History of Man’s Changing Vision of the Universe (1959), 524, citing Letter (9 or 10 April 1599) to Herwart von Hohenburg).

“The wisdom of the Lord is infinite as are also His glory and His power. Ye heavens, sing His praises., sun, moon, and planets, glorify Him in your ineffable language! Praise Him, celestial harmonies, and all ye who can comprehend them! And thou, my soul, praise thy Creator! It is by Him and in Him that all exist.” (As quoted in Mathematics and the Physical World, by Morris Kline, 1981, p. 119).

**Galileo Galilei (1564-1642)**

Galileo is most often remembered for his discovery of the telescope, his conflict with the Roman Catholic Church and his trial over his support for the idea that the earth revolved around the sun, which after the trial he was forbidden to teach.

In a letter to the Grand Duchess Christina of Tuscany, in Essays, published in 1615, Galileo wrote:

“I do not feel obliged to believe that the same God who has endowed us with senses, reason and intellect has intended us to forego their use and by some other means to give us knowledge which we can attain by them. He would not require us to deny sense and reason in physical matters which are set before our eyes and minds by direct experience or necessary demonstrations…This must be especially true of sciences of which but the faintest trace…is to be found in the Bible.” (As quoted in Orthodoxy, Liberalism, and Adaptation, 2011, by Bob Becking, p.257)

In a Letter to Benedetto Castelli, professor of mathematics at Pisa, as quoted in the Private Life of Galileo, p.83, by J.E. Potter, 1879,  Galileo wrote:

"It seems to me that it was well said by Madama Serenissima, and insisted on by your reverence, that the Holy Scripture cannot err, and that the decrees therein contained are absolutely true and inviolable. But I should have in your place added that, though Scripture cannot err, its expounders and interpreters are liable to err in many ways; and one error in particular would be most grave and most frequent, if we always stopped short at the literal signification of the words.”

Galileo also stated:

“Of such are the mathematical sciences alone; that is, geometry and arithmetic, in which the Divine intellect indeed knows infinitely more propositions, since it knows all. But with regard to those few which the human intellect does understand, I believe its knowledge equals the Divine in objective certainty, for here it succeeds in understanding necessity [or comprehending their necessity], beyond which there can be no greater sureness.” (As quoted in Mathematics and the Divine: A Historical Study by Teun Koetsier, Luc Bergmans - 2004, p. 354, attributed to Dialogue Concerning the Two Chief World Systems (1632) from the translations by Stilman Drake (1953).)

**Rene Descartes (1596-1650)**

Descartes was a French Catholic mathematician, scientist and philosopher known as the father of modern philosophy. He did not want to confront the Catholic Church as he wanted to live in peace, as the following quote shows. But he left no doubt that he believed a supreme Creator God exists.

“No doubt you know that Galileo had been convicted not long ago by the Inquisition, and that his opinion on the movement of the Earth had been condemned as heresy. Now I will tell you that all things I explain in my treatise, among which is also that same opinion about the movement of the Earth, all depend on one another, and are based upon certain evident truths. Nevertheless, I will not for the world stand up against the authority of the Church. ...I have the desire to live in peace and to continue on the road on which I have started.” (As quoted in Pendulum: Leon Foucault and the Triumph of Science By Amir D. Aczel, 2003, from a letter to Marin Mersenne (end of Feb., 1634).

“By 'God', I understand, a substance which is infinite, independent, supremely intelligent, supremely powerful, and which created both myself and everything else […] that exists. All these attributes are such that, the more carefully I concentrate on them, the less possible it seems that they could have originated from me alone. So, from what has been said it must be concluded that God necessarily exists” (As quoted in Descartes: Meditations on First Philosophy: With Selections from the Objections and Replies, p.31, By René Descartes, Bernard Williams).

“It is thus quite certain that the constitution of the true religion, the ordinances of which are derived from God, must be incomparably superior to that of every other.” (As quoted in “The Method, Meditations and Philosophy of Descartes”, Translated by John Veitch, Ll.D, 1901.

“Nothing is created or nothing is made from nothing.” (as quoted in Descartes, by Marjorie Grene, p. 147)

“Be that as it may, there is fixed in my mind a certain opinion of long [21] standing, namely that there exists a God who is able to do anything and by whom I, such as I am, have been created.”(As quoted in Descartes: Philosophical Essays and Correspondence, by Roger Ariew, 2000, p. 106)

**Blaise Pascal (1623-1662)**

Pascal was a French mathematician who laid the foundations of probability theory. As a physicist he researched into atmospheric pressure and air pressure. He invented a mechanical calculator to perform addition and subtraction. Pascal had a narrow escape from death in 1654 which resulted in change of direction of his endeavors from science to theology resulting in his theological publications. He published a collection of 18 letters (Lettres Provinciales) in 1656; and collection of his unfinished notes titled Apologie de la religion Chrétienne (Defense of the Christian Religion) was published after his death as Pensees (means ‘Thoughts’ in French).

Here are Pascal’s views on God:

‘There is a God-shaped vacuum in the heart of every man which cannot be filled by any created thing, but only by God the Creator, made known through Jesus Christ.’ (Pascal, B., quoted in: Bright, W., Jesus and the Intellectual, Campus Crusade for Christ International, Arrowhead Springs, San Bernardino, CA, 1968.)

Pascal believed ‘man’s wretchedness is explicable only as an effect of the Fall’ and that ‘For Pascal as for St Paul, Jesus Christ is the second Adam, inconceivable without the first. (Encyclopedia Britannica, 15th edition, 25:453, 1985.) Pascal thus believed in the events in Genesis, the first book of the Bible.

At the time of his recommitment to God after the accident in 1654, Pascal wrote:

“Certainty! Joy! Peace! I forget the world and everything but God! …‘I submit myself absolutely to Jesus Christ my Redeemer.” (As quoted in Boreham, F.W., A Faggot of Torches: Texts that Made History, Epworth Press, London, p. 211-212, 1926.)

“…the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob, the God of the Christians is a God of love and consolation.” (As quoted in Pascal, B., quoted in: Houston, J.M. (editor), The Mind of Fire: An Anthology of the Writings of Blaise Pascal, Multnomah Press, Portland, Oregon, p. 149, 1989).

As death approached, Pascal wrote: ‘And so I stretch forth my hands to my Redeemer, who came to earth to suffer and die for me.” (Encyclopedia Britannica, 15th edition, p. 459, 1985.

“So I hold out my arms to my Redeemer, who, having been foretold for four thousand years, has come to suffer and to die for me on earth, at the time and under all the circumstances foretold. By His grace, I await death in peace, in the hope of being eternally united to Him. Yet I live with joy, whether in the prosperity which it pleases Him to bestow upon me, or in the adversity which He sends for my good, and which He has taught me to bear by His example.” (Blaise Pascal, Pascal’s Pensées, trans. W.F. Trotter (London & Toronto: Dent & Sons; New York: Dutton, 1931), 222-223.

**Robert William Boyle (1627 – 1691)**

Robert Boyle was known as the father of modern chemistry, after whom the Boyle’s Law of gases is named. The website www.adherents.com says about Boyle ([Sources:] Michael Hunter, Robert Boyle Reconsidered (1994), Jan Wojcik, Robert Boyle and the Limits of Reason (1991)):

Encyclopedia Britannica says of him: "By his will he endowed a series of Boyle lectures, or sermons, which still continue, 'for proving the Christian religion against notorious infidels...' As a devout Protestant, Boyle took a special interest in promoting the Christian religion abroad, giving money to translate and publish the New Testament into Irish and Turkish. In 1690 he developed his theological views in The Christian Virtuoso, which he wrote to show that the study of nature was a central religious duty." Boyle wrote against atheists in his day (the notion that atheism is a modern invention is a myth) and was clearly much more devoutly Christian than the average in his era.”

Here are some of his views on God:

“Doubtless, it shews the wisdom of God, to have so fram'd things at first, that there can seldom or never need any extraordinary interposition of his power; or the employing from, time to time, an intelligent overseer, to regulate, assist, and control the motions of matter.” (“A Free Inquiry into the Vulgar Notion of Nature," Sect.1 in The Philosophical Works of the Honourable Robert Boyle (1725) Vol.2)

“God [is] the Author of the universe & free Establisher of the Laws of motion, whose general Concourse is necessary to the conservation & Efficacy of every particular physical agent” (As quoted in The Philosophy of Robert Boyle by Peter R. Anstey, 2002, p.160).

“Whereas we ought, whenever we speak of God, and of His attributes, to stand in great awe, lest we be guilty of any misapprehension or misrepresentation of Him…” (As quoted in “Treatises on the High Veneration Man's Intellect Owes to God” By Robert Boyle, 1835, p.67).

**Sir Isaac Newton (1642-1727)**

Newton, an undisputed genius in mathematics, physics and optics, invented calculus, discovered the laws of gravity and motion, invented the reflecting telescope and was well known for his research in optics. He was also a deeply religious man who saw the handiwork of God in the laws he discovered. Here are some gems from his writings:

“There are more sure marks of authenticity in the Bible than in any profane history.” (As quoted in The Facts on the Bible, By John Ankerberg, John Weldon, Dillon Burroughs, p.80)

‘This most beautiful system of the sun, planets, and comets could only proceed from the counsel and dominion of an intelligent Being. And if the fixed stars are the centers of other like systems, these, being formed by the like wise counsel, must be all subject to the dominion of One…This Being governs all things, not as the soul of the world, but as Lord over all; and on account of his dominion he is wont to be called “Lord God”, or “Universal Ruler”. … The Supreme God is a Being eternal, infinite, absolutely perfect.’ (Principia, Book III; cited in; Newton’s Philosophy of Nature: Selections from his writings, p. 42, ed. H.S. Thayer, Hafner Library of Classics, NY, 1953, accessed at www.answersingenesis.org).

“How came the bodies of animals to be contrived with so much art, and for what ends were their several parts? Was the eye contrived without skill in Opticks, and the ear without knowledge of sounds? How do the motions follow from the will and whence is the instinct of animals?…and these things being rightly dispatch’d, does it not appear from phenomena that there is a Being incorporeal, living, intelligent...?” (“Opticks: Or, A Treatise of the Reflections, Refractions, Inflections and Colors of Light" 4th Edition Corrected, 1730, By Isaac Newton, p.344-345).

“All my discoveries have been made in answer to prayer.” (As quoted in The Westminster Collection of Christian Quotations, edited by Martin H. Manser, 2001, p. 287).

“I have a fundamental belief in the Bible as the Word of God, written by men who were inspired. I study the Bible daily.” (As quoted in the book by J.H. Tiner, Isaac Newton—Inventor, Scientist and Teacher, Mott Media, Milford (Michigan), 1975; accessed at www.answersingenesis.org).

‘Opposition to godliness is atheism in profession and idolatry in practice. Atheism is so senseless and odious to mankind that it never had many professors.’ (As quoted in A Short Scheme of the True Religion, manuscript quoted in Memoirs of the Life, Writings and Discoveries of Sir Isaac Newton by Sir David Brewster, Edinburgh, 1850; cited in Newton’s Philosophy of Nature: Selections From His Writings, p. 65, ed. H.S. Thayer, Hafner Library of Classics, NY, 1953, accessed at www.answersingenesis.org.)

I believe this quote from Newton was to have a major impact on atheists’ strategy to turn the world away from God. They would deliberately work diligently to pack all top universities with their people to make the teaching of atheism or evolution part of mainstream education. [They would contribute very little to actual research though they would be professors. Their contributions would be to atheistic arguments. But the most brilliant scientists who sought the truth would still not give up their belief in God].

**Michael Faraday (1791-1867)**

Michael Faraday, one of the greatest scientists of the nineteenth century was a chemist and a physicist. He discovered new organic compounds, including benzene. But his researches on electricity and magnetism revolutionized physics and he became the pioneer of electric motors and invented the dynamo. He was a devout Christian, was an elder in his church and regularly preached sermons.

When asked about his view on life after death, he said, quoting 2 Timothy 1:12: “Speculations? I have none. I am resting on certainties. ‘I know whom I have believed and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed unto him against that day’ (As quoted in The Homiletic Review (April 1896), p. 442).

“The book of nature which we have to read is written by the finger of God.” (Michael Faraday (1859). “Experimental Researches in Chemistry and Physics”, p.471)

“I am, I hope, very thankful that in the withdrawal of the powers and things of life, the good hope is left with me, which makes the contemplation of death a comfort — not a fear. Such peace is alone the gift of God, and as it is He who gives it, why should we be afraid? His unspeakable gift in His beloved Son is the ground of no doubtful hope.” (Letter to friend Auguste De la Rive, September 1861, as quoted in Michael Faraday: Sandemanian and Scientist: A Study of Science and Religion, By Geoffrey Cantor, 2016, p.81)

**Samuel Morse (1791-1872)**

Samuel Morse was the pioneer of the telegraph and the Morse code. When the first telegraph message was sent in 1844 it said, ‘What hath God wrought’. Samuel Morse said:

“It is HIS work… “Not unto us, but to Thy Name, O Lord, be all the praise”.”

“The nearer I approach to the end of my pilgrimage… the grandeur and sublimity of God’s remedy for fallen man are more appreciated.” (As quoted in Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.106-7, Creation Science Foundation, 1995

**James Clerk Maxwell (1831-1879)**

Maxwell was a Scottish scientist in the field of mathematical physics. His equations developed the classical theory of electromagnetic radiation which led to the technological revolution that made the invention of the radio, TV, X-rays, computers and many others. His views on God:

“Almighty God, who has created man in Thine own image, and made him a living soul that he might seek after Thee, and have dominion over Thy creatures, teach us to study the works of Thy hands, that we may subdue the earth to our use, and strengthen the reason for Thy service; so to receive Thy blessed Word, that we may believe on Him whom Thou has sent, to give us the knowledge of salvation and the remission of sins. All of which we ask in the name of the same Jesus Christ, our Lord.” (As quoted by Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.208, Creation Science Foundation, 1995.

**Louis Pasteur (1822-1895)**

Pasteur was a French biologist and chemist. Before Pasteur, scientists believed in ‘spontaneous generation’ which meant that life could generate from matter. But Pasteur demonstrated that life can come only from pre-existing life. This is called the Law of Biogenesis. His discoveries led to pasteurization and immunization.

“Science brings men nearer to God.” (As quoted in Letter to an Atheist (2007) by Michael Patrick Leahy, p. 61).

“Posterity will one day laugh at the foolishness of modern materialistic philosophers. The more I study nature, the more I stand amazed at the work of the Creator. I pray while I am engaged at my work in the laboratory.” (As quoted in The Literary Digest (18 October 1902)

This is just a small sample of the beliefs about God of some of the early giants of science, all pioneers in new fields of science and medicine. Their belief in the existence of God and faith in Him increased as they made more scientific discoveries about His creation.

These great scientists acknowledged in their writings that there were atheists in their days. Atheism is not a modern phenomenon. There is nothing new about it. Even King David acknowledged in his psalms more than 3,000 years ago that there were atheists in his days. He wrote in Psalm 14:1, “The fool has said in his heart, 'There is no God'”. However, the number of atheists was not large, though a majority of the population throughout human history has not been very religious, because of limited access to Scriptures as copies were very expensive to produce.

So, what changed?

**Then Came the Theory of Evolution**

I have provided views of scientists, astronomers and medical pioneers who lived before and close to the time Charles Darwin proposed his theory of evolution in 1859 in his book On the Origin of Species. That is what changed. Darwin proposed a theory that seemingly offered an explanation for the existence of the creation without a Creator. It started the process of increasing the number of people who no longer strongly believed in the existence of God. Again, I say, Darwin’s book merely started the process of turning humans away from a strong belief in the existence of God. The ‘atheists’ had to wage a well-orchestrated campaign to popularize the concept of creation without a Creator.

Even though evolution has become mainstream today, still many leading scientists who made great discoveries and were awed by the wonders of nature knew that there was fantastic design behind creation, and only a Master Designer could have designed it and brought it into being. Here are the views of some of those scientists about God from 1860 onwards, after Darwin published his On the Origin of Species.

These quotes are taken from: https://christianheritageedinburgh.org.uk/category/science/quotes-from-famous-christians-in-science-and-medicine/

**Sir William Thomson, Lord Kelvin (1824-1907)**

Lord Kelvin discovered the First and Second Laws of Thermodynamics.

“Do not be afraid of being free thinkers. If you think strongly enough you will be forced by science to the belief in God, which is the foundation of all Religion. You will find science not antagonistic, but helpful to Religion.” (As quoted in The Times, May 2, 1903, Lord Kelvin on Religion and Science, corrected by Lord Kelvin himself in The Life of William Thompson, Baron Kelvin of Largs, by S.P. Thompson).

**Sir James Young Simpson (1811-1907)** - pioneer of anesthetics.

“But again, I looked and saw Jesus, my substitute, scourged in my stead and dying on the cross for me. I looked and cried and was forgiven. And it seems to be my duty to tell you of that Savior, to see if you will not also look and live: How simple it all becomes when the Holy Spirit opens the eyes!” (From his own personal testimony, St Columba’s Free Church, Edinburgh, where he was an elder, reproduced by Sovereign Grace Union).

**Lord Joseph Lister (1827-1912)** - pioneer of antiseptics.

“I am a believer in the fundamental doctrines of Christianity.” (As quoted in Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.196, Creation Science Foundation, 1995).

**Sir Ambrose Fleming (1849-1945)** - pioneer of electronics

“There is abundant evidence that the Bible, though written by men, is not the product of the human mind. By countless multitudes it has always been revered as a communication to us from the Creator of the Universe.” (As quoted in Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.217, Creation Science Foundation, 1995).

**George Washington Carver (1864-1943)** - pioneer of agricultural chemistry

“Without my Savior I am nothing.”

“The Lord has guided me. He has shown me the way, just as he will show everyone who turns to Him.” (As quoted in Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.228, Creation Science Foundation, 1995)

**Max Planck (1858-1947)** - pioneer of quantum physics

Max Planck, was a German theoretical physicist whose discovery of energy quanta won him the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1918.

“Both religion and science need for their activities the belief in God, and moreover God stands for the former in the beginning, and for the latter at the end of the whole thinking. For the former, God represents the basis, for the latter – the crown of any reasoning concerning the world-view.” (Max Planck, Religion und Naturwissenschaft, Leipzig: Johann Ambrosius Barth Verlag, 1958, 27).

**Wernher Von Braun (1912-1977)** - pioneer of space rockets

“An outlook… at the vast mysteries of the universe should only confirm our belief in the certainty of its Creator.”

“[Scientific concepts] exist only in the minds of men. Behind these concepts lies the reality which is being revealed to us, but only by the grace of God.” (As quoted in Ann Lamont, 21 Great Scientists who believed the Bible, p.250-1, Creation Science Foundation, 1995).

Many more quotes from scientists who worked after 1860 can be provided. Werner Von Braun died in 1977. Though no quotes from scientists after that have been included, this does not mean that the theory of evolution had won over all scientists by that time. Some prominent scientists after that who believed in God have been quoted later.

Thus, even though Charles Darwin proposed his theory of evolution in 1859, the evolutionists and atheists had to wage more than a century long, ‘loud’, vigorous campaign and propaganda to drown out the voices of creationists and believers in God, so that a majority of the world believes that evolution is true. It was not an easy task. But it was masterfully executed by the arch-deceiver Satan the devil through his primary human agents, the Germans and German masqueraders, who are people of German descent living in different countries for centuries, having assumed the common names of those countries.

Before I explain how this propaganda campaign was executed, let me first explain the German and other different views on the existence of God.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 2

**PROPAGANDA CAMPAIGN TO DENY GOD EXISTS**

**Different Views on the Existence of God**

We have set out to prove that a Supreme Creator God exists and is in complete control of the universe. If we assume God exists, we can discard all religions that are not based on the existence of God because they are entirely the philosophies of men. If God exists, He must have a plan for creating mankind, and must have an instruction manual for mankind to live by. The religions that are the philosophies of men then are a poor guide on how human beings should live. This means that we no longer need to waste time with atheism, secular humanism, animism, ancestor worship, atheistic communism, Buddhism, Shintoism, Taoism, Confucianism and the like.

There are five major religions that are based on the existence of God: Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Sikhism and Judaism. There are others that are offshoots of these main religions and differ only slightly from them in certain tenets. Christianity, Islam, Judaism and Sikhism believe in the existence of one Supreme Creator God. In Hinduism, Krishna in the Bhagavad Gita  (the Hindu holy book) claims that he is the supreme creator God and reincarnates himself anytime evil in the world multiplies. But there are thousands of other gods in Hinduism.

Germans or Gnostics have their own religion that claims the existence of multiple gods, and sheds light on how they view themselves in relation to all other peoples. The following is a quote from a book titled “The Gospel of Judas”, edited by Rodolphe Kasser, Marvin Meyer and Gregor Wurst with Commentary by Bart Ehrman. Ehrman makes this statement on pages 84-85:

“Traditional Christianity has taught, of course, that our world is the good creation of the one true God. But this was not the view of the Gnostics. According to a wide range of Gnostic groups, the god who created this world is not the only god and in fact is not even the most powerful or all-knowing god. He is a much lesser, inferior, and often ignorant deity. How can anyone look at this world and call it good? Gnostics saw the disasters around them – the earthquakes, hurricanes, floods, famines, droughts, epidemics, misery, suffering – and they declared that the world is not good…[Bible explanation for the occurrence of natural disasters is provided later].

“Some Gnostic thinkers explained this evil, material world by expounding complicated myths of creation. According to these myths, the ultimate divine being is completely removed from this world, in that he is absolutely spirit – with no material aspects or qualities. This divine being generated lots of offspring known as aeons who, like him, were spiritual entities. Originally this divine realm, inhabited by God and his aeons, was all that existed. But a cosmic catastrophe occurred in which one of these aeons somehow fell from the divine realm, leading to the creation of other divine beings who therefore came into existence outside of the divine sphere. These lesser divine beings created our material world. They made the world as a place of entrapment for sparks of divinity that they had captured, to be placed within human bodies. Some humans, in other words, have an element of the divine within them, at their core. These people don’t have mortal souls, but immortal souls, temporarily imprisoned in this capricious and miserable realm of matter. And those souls need to escape, to return to the divine realm whence they came.

“The myths narrated by the various Gnostic groups differed widely from one another in many of their details…But their overriding point is clear: This world is not the creation of the one true God. The god who made this world – the God of the Old Testament – is a secondary, inferior deity. He is not the God above all who is to be worshipped. Rather, he is to be avoided, by learning the truth about the ultimate divine realm, this evil material world, our entrapment here, and how we can escape.

“I should stress that not everyone has the means to escape. That is because not everyone has a spark of the divine within them: only some of us do. The other people are the creations of the inferior god of this world. They, like other creatures here (dogs, turtles, mosquitoes, and so on), will die and that will be the end of their story. But some of us are trapped divinities. And we need to learn how to return to our heavenly home.”

Thus the German nation believes that salvation is only for them because they have the divine spark in them whereas all other humans are like animals. When they die that is the end of their story just like cats, dogs or mosquitoes. This belief, has been the cause of much cruelty practiced by them throughout their history.  It also explains in practice how the Germans interpret their national anthem. The first stanza is translated into English as follows:

“Germany, Germany above all, above all in the world,When for protection and defense, it always takes a brotherly stand together.From the Meuse to the Memel, From the Adige to the Belt,Germany, Germany above everything, Above everything in the world!”

Though the song was originally written to help unite the various German states into one, in practice now the Germans mean Germany ruling over and above all people of the world. They initiate world wars to try and take over the world. The coming Third World War will be no exception.

Now the Germans admit it openly that Satan the devil is their god. They consider him to be the supreme god who has promised them eternity [they believe they are already divine and merely need to escape from their soul’s entrapment in human bodies] and rule of the earth above all peoples. The Bible identifies Satan the devil as a created being by the Supreme God who rebelled against his Creator. So if any German tells you he or she is an atheist, you know they are lying. And atheism in modern times has been propagated mainly by the Germans in order to deceive humanity, but primarily the modern descendants of the twelve tribes of Israel. This will be discussed later.

There are two types of atheists in the world. One kind are genuine atheists who because of their life experiences believe there is no God. This book is for them. The second kind of atheist is the German masquerader, who claims he or she is an atheist, and invents arguments endlessly in order to deceive. This book is not for them. They are dishonest and make arguments that defy human rationality. They will continue to endlessly invent new arguments, or repeatedly recycle old ones. It is pointless to try and convince a dishonest, lying individual because he is not seeking to be convinced rationally, but is interested in deceiving whomever he can.

The German story is the story of gnosticism. Most probably the original gnostics were Germans. Here is the Merriam-Webster definition of gnosticism: “the thought and practice especially of various cults of late pre-Christian and early Christian centuries distinguished by the conviction that matter is evil and that emancipation comes through gnosis. Gnosis is: esoteric knowledge of spiritual truth held by the ancient Gnostics to be essential to salvation. It is hidden knowledge that the gnostics claim they only have. Their credo is “We know, and you don’t.””

Corrie ten Boom, the Dutch citizen who with her family saved up to 800 Jews from the holocaust during the World War II, mentions in her autobiography “The Hiding Place” that sometimes her male German guard talked to her. He expressed some regret that this was happening, but repeatedly said, “You wouldn’t understand.” Yes he was saying that only us Germans know the ‘truth’ that they are divine and the rest of humanity is like cats, dogs and mosquitoes; and that we know the ‘truth’ about various gods and creation, and the way to salvation for us only. That’s why according to him Corrie ten Boom and others would not understand why they can brutally treat other humans under guidance from the ‘real’ god, Satan the devil.

The question naturally arises: Which religion is true?, or Are they all true religions, just different paths to the same goal? I have answered these questions in my book titled “Which Religion is True?” Available free at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

Hinduism, Islam, Christianity, Judaism and Sikhism constitute a large majority of the world’s population. This majority believes in the existence of God. Hinduism, Sikhism and the Germans [as the previous quote shows] believe in multiple gods. Islam, Christianity and Judaism believe in one Supreme God. Sikhs believe in one Supreme God who is over all the other gods. The issue of whether there are many gods in the universe will be addressed later. Even though atheists, secular humanists, animists, ancestor worshippers, atheistic communists, Buddhists, Shintoists, Taoists, Confucianists and the like do not believe God exists, at the back of their minds, they strongly suspect that a higher power exists that controls the natural forces. Natural disasters are a strong reminder of that. When atheists, agnostics, animists, naturalists, ancestor worshippers, or anyone engulfed in a natural disaster such as a flood, earthquake, hurricane have their very survival in doubt and are being constantly battered by the elements, they turn to God in prayer, “Please save me if You exist!!” The Higher Power thus has not left them without witness. There really are no human beings who believe that a Supreme Higher Power does not exist, though it may perhaps be only in the back of their mind that God exists.

**Propaganda Campaign to Deny the Existence of God**

We have seen from the scientists’ views that even though Charles Darwin proposed his theory of evolution in 1859, it was not immediately widely accepted. A well-orchestrated vigorous campaign had to be waged to make the theory widely accepted. It took nearly a century to accomplish that. It seems that the campaigners for evolution took their cue from Sir Isaac Newton’s statement, “‘Opposition to godliness is atheism in profession and idolatry in practice. Atheism is so senseless and odious to mankind that it never had many professors.’ (As quoted in A Short Scheme of the True Religion, manuscript quoted in Memoirs of the Life, Writings and Discoveries of Sir Isaac Newton by Sir David Brewster, Edinburgh, 1850; cited in Newton’s Philosophy of Nature: Selections From His Writings, p. 65, ed. H.S. Thayer, Hafner Library of Classics, NY, 1953, accessed at www.answersingenesis.org.)

I believe this quote from Newton was to have a major impact on atheists’ strategy to turn the world away from God. They would work diligently to pack all top and mid-level universities, and administrators in schools (who had PhDs) with their people to make the preaching of evolution and atheism part of mainstream education. They would contribute very little to actual scientific research. But as professors in universities and teachers and administrators in schools, their main contributions would be crafting atheistic arguments. But the most brilliant scientists who sought the truth would still not give up their belief in God.

How was this campaign begun? Under the guise of German rationalism.

**German Rationalism**

History of German rationalism actually slightly pre-dates publishing of “On the Origin of Species” by Charles Darwin in 1859. Conrad Philip Henke, the Professor of Theology at the University of Helmstedt (1752-1809), taught his ministerial students that the inspiration of the Bible was superstition (Hagenbach, History of Doctrines, p. 377). But the concept became popular much later, particularly after Nietsdche first declared “God is dead!” in his  1882 collection The Gay Science (also translated as "The Joyful Pursuit of Knowledge and Understanding”).

Here is why and how the plot to discredit the Bible and ridicule a belief in God was hatched and carried out.

In the late 18th and early 19th century, worldwide commerce was growing by leaps and bounds. A kind of globalization was taking place. With explosion of scientific knowledge, new inventions and growth of commerce, great amount of wealth was being created in Europe and America. The industrial revolution started in Britain. It will be explained how this was god-inspired, because God’s 2,520 year-long punishment of ancient Israel came to a close around 1800-1801 A.D. after their national captivity at the hands of the ancient Assyrians, the ancestors of the modern Germans, in 722-721 BCE. God inspired the scientific discoveries and inventions when the time came to confer the great material blessings promised to Abraham’s descendants unconditionally.

After the invention of the printing press in Europe around 1440, the Bible became more widely available in Europe and North America and began to be read by the masses. Though Britain and America had continued in the sins of Jeroboam the first king of the northern kingdom of the House of Israel after the split from the House of Judah - idolatry in the form of images and statues in the Churches, breaking the Sabbath and not keeping God’s commanded holy days, but instead keeping holidays of pagan origin such as Christmas, Easter, New Year’s Day and the like – the people generally kept the remaining eight of the ten commandments, and were by and large a moral people.

By the second half of the 18th century, the power of the Roman Church had been broken. It could no longer keep the people away from reading their bibles in their own languages. Research and knowledge of the Bible were spreading. The British and American people were thus being prepared to receive the unconditionally promised material blessings.

To prevent them from enjoying their blessings to the fullest extent and for the Germans to steal part of the blessings, Satan develop a two-pronged strategy. The strategy involved getting the Americans and the British away from God and the Bible, and then getting them to sin, which without fail produces anguish, pain and suffering. The first prong of the attack was to question the existence of God Himself and the divine inspiration of the Bible. The second prong of the attack was to use the many German masqueraders (persons of German origin who have been living in America, the British Commonwealth nations and northwestern European nations) to induce them into sexual immorality, attack the marriage institution, ridicule morality and replace it with ‘anything goes.’ The vehicle used to accomplish this was German ‘Rationalism.’

Hahn, a German Rationalist, defined Rationalism as "that manner of thought by which human reason is considered to be the only source and the only judge of all kinds of knowledge" (Hahn, De Rationalism, 1827). This simply means that ‘right’ is whatever seems reasonable to you!

The rationalist denies divine revelation and rejects the idea that the scriptures of any religion are the true inspired word of God. According to the rationalist, human reason alone is sufficient for answering all of life’s questions and deciding how to live. Gradually, the German rationalists became bolder and bolder in their blasphemies. As already stated, Conrad Philip Henke, the Professor of Theology at the University of Helmstedt (1752-1809), taught his ministerial students that the inspiration of the Bible was superstition (Hagenbach, History of Doctrines, p. 377). But the concept became popular much later, particularly after Nietzsche said, “God is dead!”

They were professors of Theology in leading German Universities. Germans actually try to portray to the world that they are atheists and rationalists and do not believe in God. But do not be fooled. They do believe in ‘god’ and their god is Satan the devil who they have been deceived into believing is much more powerful than the God of the Bible. In reality, Satan is fully under control of the God of the Bible Who can annul any of Satan’s actions any time. That will be proved later. But like Satan the father of lies, the Germans are liars and diabolical deceivers.

German Rationalism is nothing new. It’s as old as the Garden of Eden where Satan told Eve the first lie in Genesis 3:4-5 (NIV), “4 "You will not surely die," the serpent said to the woman. 5 "For God knows that when you eat of it [the forbidden fruit] your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." Satan in effect told Eve that she should be rational and decide for herself what is good and right, what is evil and wrong.

German rationalists in a diabolical plot began to teach that the Bible is old Jewish folk lore; the main characters in the Bible and some of the kingdoms mentioned never existed. Hence, they said it is ignorance and foolishness to believe in the Bible. Then the German masquerader, Charles Darwin, provided an alternate explanation for the existence of creation without a Creator, questioning the very existence of God with his Satan-inspired Theory of Evolution. A handful of German masquerader professors strategically placed in leading universities of different countries of Europe and North America added to Darwin’s theories and it began to appear that the evolution theory was accepted as a fact by most of the scientific community.

Those who really looked at the evidence and saw that evolution simply could not be proved were labeled as ‘ignorant, foolish, irrational, believers of superstitions.’ Here is an example. Richard Dawkins, a prominent evolutionary biologist, had this to say in his book, The Blind Watchmaker: “It is absolutely safe to say that if you meet somebody who claims not to believe in evolution, that person is ignorant, stupid or insane (or wicked, but I’d rather not consider that).”

Anyone who could provide evidence to the contrary was effectively silenced with such labelling. Eventually, if you did not believe in evolution, you were not hired as a professor to teach in college or school. I myself as a young science student had become ashamed to admit that I was religious for fear of being labeled as ‘ignorant’ or ‘a superstitious fool.’

A handful of German masquerader professors placed in leading universities of Europe and North America could effectively plant the seed of evolution in their respective counties. They had to go much further to make it mainstream. They had not forgotten Newton’s comment: “Atheism is so senseless and odious to mankind that it never had many professors.” They had to have many atheist professors teaching atheism and the theory for evolution in universities and schools. They began to pack universities with such professors. PhD’s in education became administrators in school systems, wrote the text books and began teaching evolution. It took decades of diligent effort, but they succeeded in making evolution mainstream. It was the only explanation for creation that had to be taught.

The natural result of denying the existence of God and believing that humanity evolved rather than was created by an intelligent God was that ‘life has no meaning.’

Romans 8:7 says, “7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God; for it is not subject to the law of God, nor indeed can be.”

Carnal humanity does not like to be subject to the law of God. Therefore, many accepted the rationalists’ arguments that the Bible is old Jewish tales and not to be believed. So, they did not have to obey the Ten Commandments and other statutes and judgments in the Bible. German masquerader preachers began to muddy pure religion by pounding the pulpits saying because of Jesus’ sacrifice, humanity no longer had to keep the Ten Commandments and the rest of the Law. Further, they said they could commit any sins and they would be forgiven due to the shed blood of Jesus Christ. Carnal Christianity was swept away with their reasoning.

After an attack on the credibility of the Bible and belief in the existence of God was well under way, an assault was begun on the second front of sexual purity and sex only within marriage. Thomas Henry Huxley, a biologist and contemporary of Charles Darwin was known as “Darwin’s bulldog” because he championed Darwin’s theory of evolution. I believe both men were German masqueraders. Among his descendants were physiologists, biologists and men of letters such as Aldous Huxley, intellectually distinguished men of their respective generations. These men declared their motives for championing their causes in their writings

Julian Huxley bluntly declared: “The sense of spiritual relief which comes from rejecting the idea of God as a superhuman being is enormous” (Essays of a Humanist, 1966, p. 223).

Julian’s brother Aldous Huxley wrote: “I had motives for not wanting the world to have a meaning; consequently I assumed that it had none, and was able without any difficulty to find satisfying reasons for this assumption…Those who detect no meaning in the world generally do so because, for one reason or another, it suits their [purpose] that the world should be meaningless” (Ends and Means, 1946, p. 273).

Huxley further explained: “For myself, as, no doubt, for most of my contemporaries, the philosophy of meaninglessness was essentially an instrument of liberation. The liberation we desired was simultaneously liberation from a certain political and economic system and liberation from a certain system of morality. We objected to the morality because it interfered with our sexual freedom…There was one admirably simple method of confuting these people and at the same time justifying ourselves in our political and erotic revolt: We could deny that the world had any meaning whatsoever” (p. 270).

Aldous Huxley admitted that they wanted to feel free of any moral standards as they desired sexual freedom. So, he and his contemporaries who thought likewise, devised their own ‘rational’ justifications for refuting any moral standards. Since God was the source of moral standards, they denied the existence of God and attacked the credibility of His inspired word, the Bible, which contained the moral standards.

Another assault on sexual purity and ‘sex within marriage only’ was made through literature. After the first world war, novels and short stories began to appear describing infidelity and other explicit sex scenes outside of marriage. One example was Lady Chatterley’s Lover by D.H. Lawrence in 1928 which was immediately banned in the U.K., but copies were available in other countries of Europe. Short stories by W. Somerset Maugham and others also depicted sex outside of marriage. Thus, Satan drove a wedge into fidelity within marriage.

Satan continued to drive the wedge deeper and deeper over the following decades till the sexual revolution of the 1960s, when the flood gates were opened. That was made possible by Germany developing the technology to electronically deliver threats to individuals and offering it to German masqueraders in America and Britain. Then the German masqueraders swung into full action to destroy marriage and families within Israelite countries. Smut began to pour out in torrents from the publishing industry in the form of viler and viler pornographic novels and magazines such as Playboy and Hustler. Then assault began in Hollywood in the film and TV industries. Marriage became the butt of endless jokes on film and TV. Gradually but relentlessly, programs and shows depicting wholesome marriages and families of the 1950s, 1960s and the early 1970s such as the Cleavers in Leave it to Beaver, the Nelsons in Ozzie and Harriet, and Little House on the Prairie were replaced by All in the Family (Archie Bunker), Roseanne, The Simpsons, Everybody Loves Raymond, Married with Children, That 70s Show and many others. Most of these shows made fun of the father as the head of the family, portraying him as dumb, a buffoon, crude and a laughingstock of the family.

Fornication, adultery, cohabitation, homosexuality and almost every other form of deviant sex and “alternative lifestyle” they could imagine, including same-sex “marriage,” have been portrayed tens of thousands of times in all types of media. All such programs and publications made all this immorality look fascinating, thrilling and mysterious. Just as the Satan-led propaganda by a few strategically placed masquerader proponents of the theory of evolution had made it look as if the entire scientific community believed in it, similar propaganda made deviant sex and ‘alternative lifestyles’ appear as the norm. Succeeding younger generations were sucked into believing that ‘everybody was doing it’ and followed the ‘herd.’

Minds thus infected in Israelite countries were driven further and further away from belief in God. But as mentioned earlier, natural disasters, not having full control over nature, and sometimes traumatic life-and-death experiences force most people on earth to keep at the back of their minds the idea “May be God exists.” The die-hard atheists are German masqueraders, whose diabolical agenda is to make humans, particularly Israelites believe that God does not exist, get them to sin and suffer the consequences in pain, anguish, suffering, violence and death. Though they claim to be atheists, they themselves believe in God. But their god is Satan. They in fact, believe in multiple gods like the Gnostics.

Let’s now prove that a Supreme Creator God exists, who is in total control of His creation.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 3

**PROOF # 1 - PROPHECIES BEFORE NOAH’S FLOOD**

**Which Holy Book is the Word of God**

A natural question that arises in the minds of most human being is: “If God exists, then Has He provided mankind an instructional manual to live by?” Many, particularly in Hinduism, claim that all religions are inspired by God and are just different paths to the same goal, salvation. But salvation according to all religions is different. Therefore, all religions cannot be the path to the same goal. All humans think alike and have similar aspirations. If a God has created all of humanity, then He would not offer different kind of salvation for different people. I have addressed this question in depth in my book *“Which Religion is True?”* available free at my web site.

Since the holy books of all religions differ in the salvation they offer to human beings, and also in the instructions on how humans should live, all the holy books cannot be inspired by the true God. The question of multiple gods will be addressed later.

The holy books of all religions are now complete. Nothing is being added to them. All the ideas of all the religions based on the existence of God are based on the understanding and interpretation of the holy books. So it is important for us to obtain our ideas about each religion from its holy book.

Since all our ideas about each religion must come from its holy book, the great question before us is: How do we prove which holy book is inspired by the supreme Creator God and is the true word of God? (I have addressed that question in depth in my book “*Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”* available free at my web site.)

What criteria can we use to evaluate each of the holy books whether is the word of God?

The most important criterion must be a demonstration of the power of Almighty God in the pages of the holy book. This means that in the pages of the holy book God must have told us that He would do numerous great things (not just one, two or three events because a few events can come true by mere coincidence) well in advance and brought them to pass exactly as foretold. Instruction on how to live our lives cannot provide us the irrefutable proof we need. Such instructions differ in each of the holy books, with some commonalities. But if we can prove that the entire holy book of a religion is backed by the power of Almighty God, then we can obey all the instructions in that holy book with confidence as well as accept the promises of salvation it offers.

The God that demonstrates His power through the pages of His instructional manual, can also be accepted as the true God. If we find that the holy books of other religions are not backed by the power of Almighty God, then those books contain mere philosophies of men, or even worse, they are inspired by false gods, who in reality are Satan and his demons masquerading around as gods.

**Caution about Imperfect Human Beings**

Since we are trying to prove which holy book is inspired by the supreme God, we must be cautious about two great issues that can prejudice us while seeking the truth. Those issues are the conduct of the professing adherents of the religion, and the differing interpretations of the scriptures by different sects of the religion.

We may be tempted to believe that we can know a religion by the fruits it produces, or the conduct of the average adherent to the religion. But the truth is that all claiming adherence to a particular religion are not devout believers and practitioners of the religion. Most of humanity claims to profess a religion, but have never even read their religion’s entire scriptures, leave alone understanding them. The average person’s understanding of his religion comes by hearsay, by whatever little he or she has learnt from family or preachers. They are busy with the cares of this world and have little time to practice their religion devoutly. Thus one will not find the true fruits of the religion by evaluating the conduct of the average adherent.

The non-Christian world evaluates Christianity from the conduct of the average Christian in America, the British Commonwealth nations, France and the Benelux and Scandinavian countries. But homosexuality, sexual immorality of every kind, drug abuse and other sins run rampant in these nations. The non-Christian world believes that is what the Bible teaches. Hence they reject Christianity as a false religion. But that is a wrong premise for rejecting the religion.

In reality such practices are condemned in the Bible in the harshest possible terms and the death penalty is prescribed for such sins. As an example, the actual command against homosexuality and the penalty for this violation of the law is described in Leviticus 20:13 (NIV):“ 13 " 'If a man lies with a man as one lies with a woman, both of them have done what is detestable. They must be put to death; their blood will be on their own heads.”

You can clearly see that the fault is not with the religion but with those who profess to follow it but are not devout adherents.

Second issue is the different interpretations of the scriptures. Each religion has many different sects and denominations because of different interpretations of the scriptures of the religion. Christianity alone by some counts has 30,000 – 40,000 different denominations, with about 2,000 being major ones. All have different interpretations of the Bible. They believe in and adhere to their own interpretation of the Bible.

Then all tenets of the religion are usually not derived from the scriptures. Christians of various denominations have added many other things, such as thoughts and philosophies of the founders or great past leaders of the religion, or traditions, to their religious practices from outside the Bible. The biggest denomination of Christianity, the Roman Catholic Church maintains that the Bible is not the sole authority to be relied on for obtaining salvation, but the teachings and traditions of their Church have greater weight.

So how do we prove which holy book is the word of God? If we can find such a book, then the God Who reveals Himself in that book is also the true Almighty God.

God’s almighty power is demonstrated by His ability to foretell the future and bring it to pass exactly as foretold. This proof is provided by numerous prophecies in the Bible of great events, the establishment and passing away of great empires in the history of mankind and bringing them to pass in precise detail. Fulfillment of these events is provable from world history. All these prophecies and their fulfillment is described in great deal in this book.

In fact, this is the very challenge the God of the Bible hurls at the gods of every other religion in Isaiah 41:21-24 (Moffatt Translation): “Now, the Eternal cries, bring your case forward, now, Jacob’s King (God) cries, STATE YOUR PROOFS. Let us hear what happened in the past, that we may ponder it, or show Me what is yet to be, that we may watch how it turns out; yes, let us hear what is coming, that we may be sure you are gods; come, do something or other that we may marvel at the sight!—why, you are things of naught, you can do nothing at all!”

God of the Bible further declares in Isaiah 46:9-10: “I am God, and there is none else; I am God, and there is none like Me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand…”

Has the God of any religion dared to take up this challenge of the God of the Bible? Lets see how the holy books of each of the religions stack up.

**Islam and the Quran**

The Quran of Islam says that males who have done good deeds as described in the Quran go to paradise. All others will go to hell. But good deeds cannot guarantee you paradise. Allah can still choose if he wants to give you paradise or not, even though you may have done good deeds. So going to paradise also depends on the mercy of Allah on the Muslim.

But we have no proof that such a paradise as promised by Allah exists. Nor do we have proof that the hell described as the fate of those who have not pleased Allah exists.  These are mere promises for the future, not prophecies for the future.

The Quran contains no prophecies that came true in the past. Our criterion to evaluate the truth of the holy book of the religion is not one, two or three prophecies, but numerous prophecies that have already come true in the history of mankind. The Quran is totally silent on the subject.

There is a future prophecy of the coming of the 12th Imam, the Mahdi [meaning ‘the guided one’] to lead Muslims to victory over the Christian west. Then the antichrist will come and the Mahdi will fight the antichrist. Then Jesus Christ will return to earth to fight along with the Mahdi to defeat and kill the antichrist. Then the entire world will convert to Islam, and Jesus Christ, a Muslim Himself, will rule over the earth and then die.

This prophecy is not in the Quran, but is contained in the Hadiths or sayings attributed to Mohammad by the companions of Mohammad. The authenticity of many of these sayings is doubtful. Still why should we believe this prophecy in Islam? The Hadiths or the Quran do not contain any prophecies about the past that came to pass exactly as foretold? Therefore the coming of the 12th Imam is merely a statement about the future without incontrovertible proof that it has been given by Almighty God and backed by His power. There is no reason to believe in this prophecy. Hence the Quran and the Hadiths have miserably failed the test that they are backed by the power of the Almighty Creator God. The Allah of Islam is a liar, an imposter and counterfeiter. There is also no reason to believe in the promises of reward in paradise and punishment in hell in the Quran on blind faith. God of the Bible instead wants us to prove all things before actually believing in them. I Thessalonians 5:21 says, “Prove all things; hold fast that which is good.”

Muslims point to the divine inspiration of the Quran stating that Mohammed was illiterate and could not have made up what he stated to his followers which was eventually preserved in the Quran. Mohammed claimed that the revelations he received were from the archangel Gabriel.

Contrast that with what the Bible describes with whom the archangel Gabriel communicated. He communicated with Daniel the prophet, an intellectual giant of His day, belonging to royalty. Gabriel also communicated with Mary the mother of Jesus who was also of the royal lineage of David.

Most of the men who wrote the Bible were intellectual giants of their times. Abraham communicated with servants of the Pharaoh of Egypt and taught them science, astronomy and mathematics. That knowledge was passed on to his sons Isaac and Jacob. Joseph was an intellectual giant of his day. One of the canals in the irrigation system he created in Egypt still exists today and carries the name Yusuf Bahr. Writer of the book of Job (Genesis 46:13) was a nephew and contemporary of Joseph and was the builder of the Great Pyramid of Gizeh which still stands today.

Isaiah the prophet was royalty. Samuel, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Ezra were priests and the most literate people of their day who wrote or edited major portions. David and wisest man who ever lived after Jesus Christ, king Solomon were royalty. All the other prophets were men of means to have been able to afford a copy of the scriptures. They were well connected in the kingdoms of Israel and Judah and knowledge and well aware of what went on in the neighboring kingdoms to have prophesied about them. The real God simply does not work with illiterate people. It was a demon masquerading around as the archangel Gabriel who communicated with Mohammed, and not the real archangel Gabriel. That is another reason why the Quran is not inspired by God. It’s worse than that. It is Satan-inspired.

**Hinduism and the Gita, Ramayana and Mahabharata**

Now let’s look at Hinduism. Krishna of the Hindus claims to be the creator or sustainer of the universe. How are we to believe whether his claim is true, or he is simply another liar, imposter, a charlatan and counterfeiter trying to deceive humanity?

The Bhagavad Gita is a discourse between Krishna and Arjun just before a great battle.  One can claim that its words have divine backing because Arjun and his side won that battle with the backing of Krishna who claimed to be the creator and sustainer of the universe. The Ramayana is similarly a story of the victory of Rama over Ravana. First, neither of the two battles are identifiable in written secular history as having taken place. Also, such a story can be written by any winning side in a battle, providing its victory as proof of divine backing. One event coming true does not constitute irrefutable proof of divine inspiration of the historical account. For incontrovertible proof of backing of the Almighty God, there must be numerous predictions, stated in great detail, provable from history that they came to pass precisely as prophesied. The holy books of Hinduism are utterly lacking in prophecy. Hence they do not provide proof of divine inspiration.

The three scriptures of the Hindus, the Gita, the Mahabharata and the Ramayana tell us that humans are born again and again as humans, or if they have done particularly evil deeds then as animals until they attain salvation.

These are mere statements we are required to believe on blind faith alone. There is no proof that any human being is born again and again as a human, or that the immortal soul of a dead human being is born into the body of an animal or another creature?  These statements about the future of mankind after death are simply unprovable.

The Hindu scriptures contain fantastic mythological tales of myriads of gods, fighting each other, showing off their powers by empowering human beings with special unbelievably fantastic powers to curse and vengefully use against other human beings to get even with them. Humans are also able to curse gods and the curses come true. The gods cower in fear and obey when cursed by them. How ridiculous. You can read about such curses in the Ramayana and the Mahabharata. Then there are tales of birds and monkey armies protecting human beings. How much more foolish and unreal can it get than that? Yet the Hindus confer the status of ‘holy’ on the fantastic tales told in the Mahabharata and Ramayana of the exact same nature as the Greek, Roman and Egyptian myths, only more fantastic than them.

Just as an example, here is one fantastic fib from *The Ramayana* – Retold by C. Rajagopalachari, Edited by Jay Mazo:

Section 36: *The Good Bird Jatayu* – Talks about the abduction of Sita by Ravana [My comments in square brackets].

The Rakshasa [Ravana] {“Rakshasa, Sanskrit (male) Rākṣasa, or (female) Rākṣasī, in Hindu mythology, a type of demon or goblin. Rakshasas have the power to change their shape at will and appear as animals, as monsters, or in the case of the female demons, as beautiful women…The term rakshasa, generally applies to those demons who haunt cemeteries, eat the flesh of men, and drink the milk of cows dry as if by magic.”

https://www.britannica.com/topic/rakshasa} held her [Sita the wife of Rama] firmly down and drove on in the aerial car. [Here we have a flying chariot-like vehicle. What a fib. If they had flying vehicles before the Flood, the knowledge would have been passed down to us through Noah or his daughter-in-Law Naamah. If they had flying vehicles, some would have probably escaped Noah’s Flood] Sita addressed the trees and plants down below and begged them to tell Rama of her fate. [Here a human is communicating with trees to convey a message to other humans or gods]. It happened that old Jatayu, half-asleep upon a tree, saw the chariot flying past. Startled by a woman's cry of distress he was wide awake in a moment and recognized Sita by her voice. She also saw him and appealed to him for rescue. Jatayu's blood was fired by the sight of her piteous plight and he threw himself in the way of the aerial car crying: "Hold, hold! What is all this?" "The King of Lanka is carrying me away by force," wailed Sita, "but what can you do to prevent it, my poor old friend? O fly to Rama and Lakshmana and tell them my helpless plight!"

But Jatayu's fighting blood, the blood of generations of lordly ancestors who ruled the air and knew not fear, was on fire. He cared not for Ravana and his might. He only saw a princess in distress. He thought of his friend Dasaratha and his promise to Rama and he was resolved that this outrage should not occur while he lived to prevent it. Jatayu now addressed Ravana directly: "Oh king, I am Jatayu, king of the eagles, [So here we have an old eagle coming to Sita’s rescue. This bird can also talk, as most animals in the Hindu holy books can talk to humans] a king like you. Listen to me, brother king! Forbear from this wicked act. How can you call yourself a king and do this shameful wrong? Is it not the rule of kings to protect the honor of women? And Sita is a princess. I warn you, you shall surely perish unless you leave her and go. Her very look will reduce you to ashes. You are carrying a venomous cobra in your bosom. The noose of Yama [the god of death] is round your neck and dragging you to perdition. I am old and unarmed and you are young, fully armed and seated in a chariot. Yet I cannot look on, while you carry off Sita.

“Why do you do this cowardly act behind Rama's back? If you have any grievance against him, meet him face to face. [This is also a righteous bird and can teach demons and humans righteousness]. O, you would fly away from me, would you? You shall not escape while I am alive! I care not for your chariot or your ten heads, or your glittering arms! [Ravana has ten heads and twenty arms]. Your heads shall roll on the ground that you have polluted with your presence. Get down from your car, and fight if you are not a coward as well as a thief!" Ravana flared up in a rage. He attacked Jatayu. It was like a clash between a mighty wind and a massive rain-cloud. The battle raged in the sky above the forest. Jatayu fought like a winged mountain. Ravana aimed deadly darts at him. But the eagle intercepted them all and with his talons tore Ravana's flesh. The enraged Rakshasa despatched sharp, serpent-like missiles against the bird. The bird-hero was desperately wounded, but fought on undauntedly while Sita watched the unequal combat with beating heart and tearful eyes. The sight of her made Jatayu all the fiercer in his attacks on Ravana. But his years were telling on him and he felt he must gather all his strength for a supreme attempt to conquer. Regardless of the wounds, he attacked Ravana fiercely and with his wings broke off and threw down his jewelled crown and deprived him of his bow. He attacked the chariot and killed the demon-faced mules and the charioteer and smashed the vehicle into a thousand pieces. Ravana fell on the ground, still clutching Sita. The elements rejoiced to see Ravana fall. The gallant old bird swooped down on Ravana's back and tore great chunks of flesh off it and tried to wrench off the arms which held Sita. But Ravana had twenty arms, [It’s a pity that Hindus cannot recognize these as mythical figures and not anything real. The Greeks, Romans and Egyptians recognized their myths as falsehoods nearly 2,000 years ago and turned to Christianity in the case of Greeks] and no sooner was one pulled off than another took its place and Sita was held in writhing helplessness. At last Ravana let go Sita and unsheathing his sword cut off the bird's wings and talons. The old bird was now helpless and fell on the ground unable to move.

Later Rama and Lakshmana were desperately searching for Sita. “They had not proceeded far when they came on Jatayu, bloody and mutilated, unrecognizable, lying on the ground…After a few moments Jatayu spoke again in a low voice: "Be not afraid, Rama. You will surely find Sita. No harm will come to her. Regaining the treasure you have lost, you will greatly rejoice." With these words, he spat out blood and gave up life.”

Both the Ramayana and Mahabharata are full of many such fantastic fibs.

One can still see Hindu fakirs wasting their lives on the banks of the Ganges river around the city of Benares in torturous meditation, austerities such as sitting in front of fires in the summer, with the hope of gaining yogic powers and boons from one of the gods as described in the Ramayana and Mahabharata, so that they can curse whoever offends them, or even at whim. They survive by begging. Outside of the fantastic tales in the Hindu scriptures, there is not even one single story in provable genuine history of any human ever having gained such yogic powers. If the Almighty God was backing up the Hindu scriptures, we should be able to see many of these almost naked begging fakirs with yogic powers today. Don’t waste your time trying to find such proof. If there was such proof, most of India would have flocked to that fakir in veneration.

Thus based on our criterion, the holy books of Hinduism have failed to prove that they are backed by the power of Almighty God.

**Sikhism and the Guru Granth**

The holy book of the Sikhs, the Guru Granth also contains no prophecies of many great events that came to pass precisely as foretold to provide us incontrovertible proof that its words are backed by Almighty God. So its words are mere philosophies of men, and not inspired by the true Creator God. We are asked to simply believe on blind faith that the salvation promised in it is the truth. The Guru Granth of the Sikhs thus has also failed our test that its words are backed by the power of the Almighty Creator God.

**German Gnostic Myths**

Just like the holy books of Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism, the German gnostic myths contain no prophecies. In their case though, their myths are not the philosophies of men, but are directly inspired by Satan the devil. The Germans don’t deny that.

We have thus seen that three religions of the world: Islam, Hinduism and Sikhism have failed our test that their holy books are backed by the power of Almighty God.

Next, we will examine the holy book of Judaism, the Old Testament of the Bible, and the holy book of Christianity, the entire Bible according to the criterion we have established to determine whether its words have the backing of the power of Almighty God or not.

**Prophecies Before Noah’s Flood**

The Bible contains numerous prophecies of the past and for the future. Let’s now examine these prophecies to test whether they came true in the past to prove that the Bible has been backed by the power of Almighty God.

In this chapter we will examine prophecies till Noah’s Flood.

**Curse on the Earth**

The very first prophecy God pronounced was a curse on the ground which is still being fulfilled today.

After Adam and Eve had disobeyed God in the Garden of Eden and eaten of the fruit of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, God pronounced a sentence on them in Genesis 3:17-19 (NKJV): “17 Then to Adam He said, "Because you have heeded the voice of your wife, and have eaten from the tree of which I commanded you, saying, 'You shall not eat of it': "Cursed is the ground for your sake; In toil you shall eat of it all the days of your life. 18 Both thorns and thistles it shall bring forth for you, and you shall eat the herb of the field. 19 In the sweat of your face you shall eat bread till you return to the ground, for out of it you were taken; for dust you are, and to dust you shall return.”

In the Garden, Adam and Eve had their food provided for them. They just had to tend the Garden. But after they disobeyed God’s instructions, they were expelled from the Garden and had to produce their own food by toil and hard work. It has not been easy for humanity to feed itself since then. Many have starved to death in the history of mankind, and many don’t eat to the full every day even today, despite our so-called matchless advances in technology. We are always trying to play catch-up in feeding all of humanity. It will continue to be our condition until our Creator Jesus Christ returns to earth, rules over all of humanity and lifts this curse.

Humanity has suffered from the ravages of this punishment throughout its history. God does not have to intervene to make lives difficult for us. Beginning with Adam and Eve humanity chose to go its own way rather than obtain all its instructions from God. It is our own ways, and our wrong agricultural practices that bring this curse on us. But God prophesied this would happen, and it has continued to be fulfilled throughout man’s history.

**Prophecy about Cain**

One of the earliest prophecies about the future of a man in the Bible was about Cain, the first son of Adam and Eve who murdered his righteous brother Abel. After the murder God pronounced a curse on Cain, meaning predicted his future course of life, which is stated in Genesis 4:8-12(NKJV):

“8 Now Cain talked with Abel his brother; and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him. 9 Then the Lord said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?" 10 And He said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground. 11 So now you are cursed from the earth, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. 12 When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you. A fugitive and a vagabond you shall be on the earth.”

The story of how this prophecy was fulfilled precisely will be told when a brief account of the ancient history of man is provided.

**The Flood**

But Cain’s story does not end there. People before the Flood had very large families. Many children were born to Cain, and the non-white races originated in Cain’s line due to his disobedience to God. Cain’s descendants continued in his way of robbery, violence, plunder and imposing tribute on others by force. One of his descendants named Lamech became a very powerful man in the world and also ruled by imposing tribute on others. It was inevitable that Lamech and Cain would eventually clash as both would try to extend their rule and extract tribute from the same peoples. This clash eventually led to war between them in which Lamech killed his ancestor Cain. This is also indicated in Lamech’s statement to his two wives in Genesis 4:23 (NKJV): “23 Then Lamech said to his wives: "Adah and Zillah, hear my voice; Wives of Lamech, listen to my speech! For I have killed a man for wounding me, even a young man for hurting me.” According to Jewish tradition, the great man Lamech killed for wounding him was his ancestor Cain.

After Cain’s violent death, his descendants continued in his way. Genesis 4:17-24 provides Cain’s genealogy to the 7th generation which lived in the period just before Noah’s Flood, the last of which died in the Flood.

After Enoch the son of Cain, the names of the next 3 descendants of Cain are listed simply because they were part of the genealogy of Lamech. They did nothing significant to which God wanted to draw our attention. But when the Bible comes to Lamech, seven verses are devoted to seven key individuals in his family: Lamech himself, his two wives Adah who was racially white, and Zillah [name means dark] who was African black, his sons Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain and his daughter Naamah. These were seven world famous individuals in the generation just before the Flood. They forced the people to worship them as gods.

Paganized version of their story has come to us in the myths of various nations such as the Greek, Roman, Egyptian and Indian myths. These individuals deified themselves as gods and demanded to be worshipped by the people. Lamech was worshipped as Zeus, Adah as Hara, Zillah as Demeter, Jabal as Hercules, Jubal as Apollo, Tubalcain as Vulcan and Naamah as the goddess Athena.

They lived the way of Cain, forcing others to pay tribute to them or face violence. Also notice that Lamech had two wives that the Bible recognizes: Adah and Zillah. He apparently was the first bigamist in the history of mankind. But the myths tell us that he had many wives, mistresses and took other women as he chose.

An overview of ancient history will be provided later which describes what events and conditions in the world led to God drowning the entire ancient world in a Flood, saving only Noah and seven other persons in his family.

Briefly, the Bible describes the condition in the world before the Flood in Genesis 6:1-2 (NKJV): “1 And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born unto them, 2 That the sons of God [the Hebrew word used here is Elohim, the correct translation of which is always plural, gods, and the word can be used to describe the true God, meaning God the Father and Jesus Christ collectively, or pagan gods] saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose.”

The sons of gods referred to here are Lamech and his descendants who had deified themselves as gods, but were all non-white. They took as many of the fair women of the line of Seth as they chose. These were forced interracial marriages and relationships. The result of these interracial relationships was violence in the extreme. The whole earth became saturated with violence and bloodshed. This condition is described further in Genesis 6 and what God decided to do about it.

“5 Then the Lord saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. 6 And the Lord was sorry that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart. 7 So the Lord said, "I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth, both man and beast, creeping thing and birds of the air, for I am sorry that I have made them." 11 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence.12 So God looked upon the earth, and indeed it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted their way on the earth.”

The Bible says that because of the evil ways of Cain’s descendants, all of humanity had become corrupt and every intent of the thoughts of each and every human being was only evil continually. As a result, the earth had become saturated with violence. All had become corrupt except Noah and a small part of his family. Verses 8-10 state: “8 But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. 9 This is the genealogy of Noah. Noah was a just man, perfect in his generations. Noah walked with God. 10 And Noah begot three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.”

Because Noah walked with God, God decided to destroy all of humanity in a Flood and save only Noah alive with his 3 sons and their 4 wives. So, God instructed Noah to build an ark to save his family and animals of each kind. These instructions continue in Genesis 6:13-22:

“13 And God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them; and behold, I will destroy them with the earth. 14 "Make yourself an ark of gopherwood; make rooms in the ark, and cover it inside and outside with pitch. 15 And this is how you shall make it: The length of the ark shall be three hundred cubits [a cubit is about 18 inches long], its width fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits. 16 You shall make a window for the ark, and you shall finish it to a cubit from above; and set the door of the ark in its side. You shall make it with lower, second, and third decks.

“17 And behold, I Myself am bringing floodwaters on the earth, to destroy from under heaven all flesh in which is the breath of life; everything that is on the earth shall die. 18 But I will establish My covenant with you; and you shall go into the ark--you, your sons, your wife, and your sons' wives with you. 19 And of every living thing of all flesh you shall bring two of every sort into the ark, to keep them alive with you; they shall be male and female. 20 Of the birds after their kind, of animals after their kind, and of every creeping thing of the earth after its kind, two of every kind will come to you to keep them alive. 21 And you shall take for yourself of all food that is eaten, and you shall gather it to yourself; and it shall be food for you and for them." 22 Thus Noah did; according to all that God commanded him, so he did.”

God told Noah what he was about to do about a hundred years before the Flood actually came to first warn the world to repent. Many saw the huge ark he was building on dry land and certainly laughed him to scorn, and no one repented of their evil deeds. God also gave him instructions on how to save his family, then carried out what He said He would do. These details are provided in Genesis 7:

“7 So Noah, with his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives, went into the ark because of the waters of the flood. 8 Of clean animals, of animals that are unclean, of birds, and of everything that creeps on the earth, 9 two by two they went into the ark to Noah, male and female, as God had commanded Noah.10 And it came to pass after seven days that the waters of the flood were on the earth. 11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, on that day all the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. 12 And the rain was on the earth forty days and forty nights.

“13 On the very same day Noah and Noah’s sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and Noah’s wife and the three wives of his sons with them, entered the ark— 14 they and every beast after its kind, all cattle after their kind, every creeping thing that creeps on the earth after its kind, and every bird after its kind, every bird of every sort. 15 And they went into the ark to Noah, two by two, of all flesh in which is the breath of life. 16 So those that entered, male and female of all flesh, went in as God had commanded him; and the Lord shut him in.

“17 Now the flood was on the earth forty days. The waters increased and lifted up the ark, and it rose high above the earth. 18 The waters prevailed and greatly increased on the earth, and the ark moved about on the surface of the waters. 19 And the waters prevailed exceedingly on the earth, and all the high hills under the whole heaven were covered. 20 The waters prevailed fifteen cubits [or above 22 ½ feet] upward, and the mountains were covered. 21 And all flesh died that moved on the earth: birds and cattle and beasts and every creeping thing that creeps on the earth, and every man… 23   Only Noah and those who were with him in the ark remained alive. 24 And the waters prevailed on the earth one hundred and fifty days.”

God of the Bible prophesied about the global Flood in Noah’s day and brought it to pass. Only an Almighty God could gather such quantity of water to cover the highest mountain tops to a depth of 22 ½ feet. That provides convincing evidence that the God of the Bible is indeed the Almighty God.

The Almighty God did really drown that world because of its wickedness, corruption and violence because **Jesus Christ Himself affirmed in Luke 17:26-27 that Noah’s Flood was a fact.** He stated: “…as it was in the days of Noe, so shall it be also in the days of the Son of man. They did eat, they drank, they married wives, they were given in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark, and the flood came, and destroyed them all.”

**Prophecy About Destruction of the Earth**

Another prophecy about the Flood is still being fulfilled today.

When God informed Noah of His intention to destroy all flesh on land, the Bible states in Genesis 6:12-13 (NIV): “12 God saw how corrupt the earth had become, for all the people on earth had corrupted their ways. 13 So God said to Noah, "I am going to put an end to all people, for the earth is filled with violence because of them. I am surely going to destroy both them and the earth.”

Did you catch that? God said He was also going to destroy the earth along with mankind. This was a further curse on the earth in addition to the curse in Adam’s time.  Both these curses are still in effect today. That’s why we experience natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes, tornadoes, tsunamis, floods, draughts etc. We will explain later how this curse is connected to the natural disasters we experience today. Both these curses will, however, be lifted when God sets up His kingdom on earth.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 4

**PROOF # 2 - PROPHECIES AFTER THE FLOOD**

**A Major Prophecy About the Races**

Not only did God prophesy about the future of humanity in general, He also foretold the future of the three broad races, white, black and yellow on earth. This is how this came about.

Noah himself was racially white, along with his wife and three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth. But his three sons married women of different races. Shem married a white woman, Ham a black negro woman and Japheth an oriental looking woman. That is how the different races originated after the Flood.

About 45-50 years after the Flood, Noah returned to the activity of growing a vineyard and producing wine.  This probably was the first vineyard after the Flood and Noah was probably returning to this activity after many decades. He perhaps forgot the potency of wine and inadvertently got drunk. As a result, when Noah was unaware of his surroundings, somehow he became naked in his tent. Canaan the younger son of Ham then committed a perverted act with his grandfather Noah.

Notice verse Genesis 9:24: “And Noah awoke from his wine, and knew what his younger son [that is, Ham’s younger son Canaan] had done unto him.” When Ham came to the tent he merely looked on or “saw the nakedness” of his father (vs. 22)! He immediately told his two brothers and they covered him, as described in verse 23: “And Shem and Japheth took a garment, and laid it upon both their shoulders, and went backward, and covered the nakedness of their father; and their faces were backward, and they saw not their father’s nakedness.”

After this incident, what Noah said is recorded in verses 25-27: “And he said, Cursed be Canaan; a servant of servants shall he be unto his brethren. And he said, Blessed be the Lord God of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant. God shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall dwell in the tents of Shem; and Canaan shall be his servant.”

Here Noah pronounced a curse on Canaan. Canaan was punished for his sin! A superficial reading of these verses may lead one to conclude that Noah was striking out against Canaan in anger. His words were not uttered in uncontrolled emotion. Noah here was directly inspired by God to make these statements. He was speaking a MAJOR PROPHECY about the races that would affect the fortunes of all peoples after the Flood. Peter the apostle said: “Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the holy Ghost [spirit] (2 Peter 1:20-21).

Noah’s prophecy concerning the races has proved true through all generations since the Flood and is still being fulfilled today.

Let’s analyze this prophecy. The descendants of Shem are today located mainly among the Semitic and Northwestern European peoples. The descendants of Japheth are found among the Latin, Slavic, and Oriental peoples. Remember Japheth himself was white but had married an oriental woman. So, some of his descendants would be born white, some oriental and some mixed looking. And the descendants of Ham are found primarily among the dark races in black Africa and parts of India.

Now notice what God said about the future status of each of Noah's three sons in world-wide terms. First, Shem: "Blessed be the Lord God of Shem ..." This expression shows that the knowledge of the true God would be preserved among the descendants of Shem -- a prophetic fact true to this day. The knowledge of the true God has been preserved among the sons of Shem while the descendants of Ham and Japheth have created pagan gods and received their little understanding of the true God through Shem's offspring! God’s blessings also imply material prosperity.

Next, Japheth: “God shall enlarge Japheth.” This means that they would spread out and experience great growth in population. The proof of fulfillment of this prophecy is the fact that the greatest concentrations of earth's population exist in the Orient. Yet they would live under the influence of Shem, which is what is meant by the next phrase "he shall dwell in the tents of Shem!”

Lastly, the descendants of Ham except for Canaan are not mentioned in the prophecy. The descendants of Ham, the black race, were not given any special blessings. Many countries descended from him are some of the poorest nations on earth, and live in squalor, poverty and disease. The descendants of Canaan were destined to be "servants of servants" in this world. Presumably it is Canaan’s children scattered among nations after Joshua drove them out of the land of Canaan throughout Asia, Africa, North and South America, as well as in Europe that have been reduced to the general status of servants. In nearly every nation they would constitute the lowest classes.

But why did God not pronounce any blessings on the descendants of Ham? It has to do with Canaan’s sin, which earned him the curses, and Ham’s personal attitude under the influence of his Negro wife, the pre-Flood Naamah, the daughter of Lamech which earned him no blessings from God. In pre-Flood society the charge to make the world one race through interracial marriages was led by the dark descendants of Cain, particularly those of Lamech and Zillah. Naamah was their daughter. They successfully achieved this goal because they were the leading mighty and technologically advanced people of that world. If they had achieved similar success after the Flood, they would have continued on the same path of forced interracial marriages, and the result would have been the same: the world would have become one racially, socially, culturally, and of one pagan religion led by the black descendants of Ham, with the knowledge of the true God wiped off from the earth.

In fact, after the Flood, the son and grandson of Ham, Cush and Nimrod, started on precisely that same path. They rebelled against God and Noah and separated themselves from the other descendants of Noah to build their own society and religion opposed to the true God. Then they went about building a great empire to bring the entire world under their control. Cush and Nimrod were also forcing interracial marriages. They would have achieved the same goal as before the Flood of making the world one religion, one society, one race, if they had not been stopped by direct intervention from God. This intervention came in the form of confusing the language of mankind at the Tower of Babel which led to races being separated. And then Nimrod was executed by Shem for his many crimes, probably at God’s command. This history is provided in the next chapter.

Canaan’s descendants also followed their ancestor in committing sexual perversions. That is why God gave the laws to Israel in Leviticus 18 against sexual perversions and incest. This is confirmed by Leviticus 18:27: “(For all these abominations have the men of the land done, which were before you, and the land is defiled.)” In addition, the inhabitants of Sodom and Gomorrah were descendants of Canaan (Genesis 10:19), who perished when God rained fire and brimstone on them for their sexual perversions.  Later God decided to destroy the Canaanites utterly and give their land over to the Israelites. Some of them escaped destruction and fled to other nations, where they were forced to give up their perversions.

Now think of the significance and impact of this prophecy! Years before the Tower of Babel, God foretold the status of the white, yellow, and dark races for all future generations. So, Noah’s prophecy given soon after the Flood, now about 4,300 years ago is still being fulfilled today proving that the words of the Bible are backed by the power of Almighty God who declares great events and then continues to bring them to pass in precise detail over thousands of years.

To appreciate why God of the Bible gave further prophecies, we should first briefly understand man’s history for the first 2,000 years from the pages of the Bible. I have reconstructed that history in my two books titled “Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood” Volume 1 and “Satan vs God: From the Flood to Abraham’s Call” Volume 2.  The second book covers the period from the Flood till the time God began to deal with Abraham. This brief history in the next chapter has been condensed from the two volumes.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 5

**MAN’S ANCIENT HISTORY IN BRIEF**

[The source for the following brief history of man is my two books on ancient history titled: *“Satan vs God: From the Beginning to the Flood*” Volume 1 and “*Satan vs God: From the Flood to Abraham’s Call*” Volume 2.]

If the Creator God has created the universe and the earth, and the earth experiences natural disasters, it then follows that God is responsible for natural disasters. But why would the Creator who calls Himself merciful allow natural disasters and evil to occur that kills human and animal life and causes so much pain and suffering? The short answer is that God has left man to his own devices. This brief ancient history of man explains why.

Even though some don’t believe it, but most have heard of the Bible story that God initially created Adam and Eve and placed them in the Garden of Eden. They could eat of every fruit in the Garden except of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. But under Satan’s lying influence they disobeyed God and ate of the forbidden fruit. As a result, they were expelled from the Garden to build their own civilization with little guidance from God. Since then, God has been working on a 7,000-year plan to bring humanity to Himself and build a relationship with Him. He has allotted the first 6,000 years to man to do as he pleases.

In driving man out of the Garden of Eden, God effectively told him: “Adam and Eve, by taking of the fruit of the tree of good and evil, you have made a decision for yourself, and all your descendants, to rebel against My commands, My government and My way of life characterized by love, giving and sharing. You have rejected Me as the source of knowledge of how to live. You have chosen to decide for yourself through your own experiences, trial and error and your own human reasoning as influenced by Satan, what is good and evil, right and wrong, rather than be taught by me. By listening to and obeying Satan, you have now opened yourself to be influenced by him.

“I am now sentencing you for 6,000 years to be cut off from Me and access to My Holy Spirit, which you would have received by taking of the fruit of the tree of life. Go out into the world and develop your own society and civilization. Develop your own methods of government, make your own laws, make your own gods and develop your own religions, your own education systems and how you will impart knowledge to your descendants. In the ways that you develop with your own reasoning and experience, good will be mixed with evil. Because you chose to obey Satan, in all this you will be influenced and deceived by Satan in his way of self-centeredness, vanity, lust, greed, envy, jealousy, hatred, competition and strife which will lead to violence, wars, bloodshed and ultimately death.

“However, I will also ensure that knowledge of My ways will not die out completely in the world. Since you will not have access to My holy spirit, your understanding to know My way will not be opened to you, and without My holy spirit you will not be able to live that way. But, I will call a few individuals [such as Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Job, Moses, David, Elijah, Elisha and the prophets] for special service during these 6,000 years and give them My holy spirit. I will teach them My ways and they shall live that way with the help of the holy spirit. They will be required to do what you have failed to do. They will have to reject Satan’s way, resist and overcome him, and develop and grow in My holy, righteous character. Those who successfully resist and overcome Satan, and develop My holy, righteous character will qualify to receive eternal life and become my sons, and shall rule with Me as kings and priests in My kingdom over all nations.

“After you and your descendants have written the lesson of Satan’s way and your own ways in 6,000 years [which by the way are coming to a close] of suffering, anguish, want, scarcity, strife, violence, wars, bloodshed and death, and the world will have been brought to the brink of total annihilation, then I will use my supernatural power to intervene to save you from yourselves and Satan. After you have learnt the utter hopelessness of living your way and Satan’s way, I will take back my kingdom and government from you. I will then set up My own kingdom and government over you for 1,000 years. I will then teach all humanity My way and give everyone who repents of his sins and his way of life my holy spirit, which will give them power to understand and keep My laws and live according to My way of life. I will then demonstrate to all of humanity that My way of love produces true peace, happiness, joy, abundance and prosperity, and that your way and Satan’s way produces pain, suffering and death. During that time, I will imprison Satan so that he will no longer be able to influence you. I will give salvation to those who develop holy and righteous character through the power of the holy spirit. They shall receive My gift of eternal life and become My sons.

“During the 6,000 years most of your descendants will not be called and given My holy spirit. But neither will I judge them. But at the end of 1,000 years of My kingdom, I will use My divine power to resurrect them back to life as physical human beings again. I will then offer eternal salvation to all of them. Those who repent of their sins will be given My holy spirit to enable them to keep My laws and live according to My way of life. Satan will not be around to influence them. So they will not have to resist and overcome him. They will have to overcome only their own natures and the pulls of society. Those who develop My holy and righteous character will be granted the gift of eternal life and become my immortal sons. Those who fail to do so, will be destroyed in the Lake of Fire and their lives extinguished forever.”

The good news is that almost all of humanity will accept God’s way as taught and lived during 1,000 years of God’s Kingdom, after they contrast it with the 6,000 years that humanity lived in its own way as influenced by Satan. Of course, all of humanity will be able to see God during His kingdom. After that, literally all humans made immortal as God’s literal sons and daughters will live with Him for eternity. They will have learnt to obey and trust God completely. That is the reason why God allows pain and suffering on earth. He allows man to die because He knows He will resurrect him again to life.

Now let’s continue with the history. After Adam and Eve were driven out of the Garden of Eden, their first son Cain was born. He murdered his righteous brother Abel.

After the murder God pronounced a curse on Cain, meaning predicted his future course of life, which is stated in Genesis 4:8-12(NKJV): “8 Now Cain talked with Abel his brother; and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother and killed him. 9 Then the Lord said to Cain, "Where is Abel your brother?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?" 10 And He said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground. 11 So now you are cursed from the earth, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. 12 When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you. A fugitive and a vagabond you shall be on the earth.”

Here is the evidence that this prophecy about Cain becoming a vagabond, fugitive and the earth not yielding its strength to him came true as prophesied.

After God pronounced the curse on Cain, he complained about the severity of his punishment. Verses 13-15 state: “13 And Cain said to the Lord, "My punishment is greater than I can bear! 14 Surely You have driven me out this day from the face of the ground; I shall be hidden from Your face; I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond on the earth, and it will happen that anyone who finds me will kill me." 15 And the Lord said to him, "Therefore, whoever kills Cain, vengeance shall be taken on him sevenfold." And the Lord set a mark on Cain, lest anyone finding him should kill him.”

The mark God set on Cain has been misunderstood, but Deuteronomy 32:8 (NKJV) explains what happened: “8 When the Most High divided their inheritance to the nations, when He separated the sons of Adam [that is Cain from the other sons of Adam], He set the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel.”

The mark on Cain was simply a land boundary marker God set between Cain and the other descendants of Adam so that they would live separately and develop their own civilizations. Then verse Genesis 4:16 states: “16 Then Cain went out from the presence of the Lord and dwelt in the land of Nod on the east of Eden.”

After separating from the other future descendants of Adam, Cain went away and traveled to the East. The details of what Cain and his descendants did are provided by the Jewish historian Josephus. He states in *Antiquities of the Jews* 1.1.2 that Cain “wandered over many countries.” Thus, Cain became a vagabond as prophesied. The reason he became a vagabond was the curse pronounced on his agricultural pursuits. God had said to him: “12 When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you.”

The reason Cain’s agricultural pursuits were cursed is provided by Josephus. He states in Antiquities 1.2.1: “But Cain was not only very wicked in other respects, but was wholly intent upon getting; and he first contrived to plough the ground.” Josephus further says that he was “a covetous man’ and “forced the ground.” In other words, Cain used farming methods that depleted the soil. He would use land for raising crops for a few years. Then when the soil got depleted, he would move on and raise crops on new soil.  When that soil got depleted, he would be forced to move on to new land. That is why he became a vagabond on earth.

The problem with Cain was that he did not want to raise animals as he probably did not want to take the trouble of looking after them and cleaning up after them. The reason he became angry with his brother Abel was that Abel brought to God an offering of the best of his flocks of sheep or goats because he raised animals. Cain brought an offering of the grain and fruits and vegetables he raised. But God rejected Cain’s offering because God required an offering of animals as a sacrifice and not of grain, fruits and vegetables. So Cain got angry with Abel because his offering was accepted, but his own was rejected. That is why he murdered his brother.

After Cain was punished for murdering his brother, he began to hate God. In his rebellion he would not raise farm animals whose manure would have helped maintain the fertility of the soil he used for raising crops. Instead his agricultural practices depleted the soil and he was forced to move on and till new land. Since Cain had to produce his own knowledge by trial and error, he did not know that his agricultural pursuits came to nothing because of lack of animal manure.

This story was repeated wherever he wandered on earth. He was forced to live by hunting and gathering. But he also had no good weapons for hunting. Metallurgy had not been discovered yet. So he did not have metal-tipped bows and arrows. The clean animals like deer and fowl were too swift for him to hunt. To supplement their poor crops, his descendants had to resort to hunting unclean slower animals like elephants, mammoths, bears and others to provide food for his growing family. His descendants also began to live in caves. Cain and his descendants thus began to live a degenerate lifestyle, becoming wanderers and vagabonds on earth. Archaeology has provided evidence of this.

Of course, the other children of Adam faced no such problem because they kept domestic animals such as cows, sheep and goats.

Finally, when he was unable to make a comfortable living on the earth, he decided to move near the other descendants of his father Adam, his other brothers and sisters. Josephus again describes what happened in *Antiquities* 1.2.2: “And when Cain had traveled over many countries, he, with his wife, built a city, named Nod, which is a place so called, and there he settled his abode; where also he had children. However, he did not accept of his punishment in order to amendment, but to increase his wickedness; for he only aimed to procure everything that was for his own bodily pleasure, though it obliged him to be injurious to his neighbors. He augmented his household substance with much wealth, by rapine and violence; he excited his acquaintance to procure pleasures and spoils by robbery, and became a great leader of men into wicked courses. He also introduced a change in that way of simplicity wherein men lived before; and was the author of measures and weights. And whereas they lived innocently and generously while they knew nothing of such arts, he changed the world into cunning craftiness. He first of all set boundaries about lands: he built a city, and fortified it with walls, and he compelled his family to come together to it; and called that city Enoch, after the name of his eldest son Enoch.”

Josephus shows that Cain after wandering the earth for more than a century came back and settled near the other descendants of Adam. He saw them living in relative ease and comfort because of the animals they kept for meat, milk, and for maintaining the fertility of the soil with manure. Cain and his descendants still refused to keep animals in rebellion against God. He then began to make a living by robbing crops and animals from the families of his brothers, Adam’s other children.

As a result of their robberies and plunder,Cain and his descendants began to be hunted to bring them to justice. Cain then fortified his city with high walls for protection. After committing their acts of robbery and plunder, his descendants would run to their fortified city. That’s how Cain became a fugitive. Thus, each and every prophecy pronounced on him came true, providing us proof that the God of the Bible is Almighty who could pronounce such a curse on Cain and bring it to pass on him and his descendants, precisely as prophesied.

Then Cain saw that humanity needed items like salt, and building materials such as naturally occurring bitumen or asphalt. He simply occupied the sources of supply and called them his own. He then began to sell those items to anybody who could pay for them for what he needed. Then he started fencing the grazing land that Adam’s other children used and called it his own. Others would have to pay him for the right to graze their animals in that land.

Then, just like the Mafia of recent years, Cain began to threaten Adam’s other descendants with violence unless they paid him tribute. Thus people could buy protection from his robberies and plunder by paying tribute. That is what the Bible calls Cain’s Way, the way of life he originated, which all of humanity has followed ever since.

Cain continued to hate God and did not want to worship Him because of being rebuked when his offering of grains and vegetables was not accepted. He took his guidance from Satan. Since he and his descendants lived apart from God, they swallowed Satan’s lie to Eve in Genesis 3:3-4, “ 4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die: 5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.” They believed they had an immortal soul which cannot die.

Cain and some of his descendants then deified themselves as gods. Their names ending in ‘el,’ which means the ‘eternal’ prove that. Genesis 4:18 states, “18 And unto Enoch was born Irad: and Irad begat Mehujael: and Mehujael begat Methusael: and Methusael begat Lamech.” This is the origin of ancestor worship among Cain’s descendants.

As punishment for his continually multiplying sins, non-white children began to be born to Cain. Thus, all the non-white races originated with Cain. In the meantime, the children Cain had left in other parts of the world when he wandered the earth also grew into tribes. Since they did not keep domestic animals, and continued to follow Cain’s wrong agricultural practices, and still did not have effective weapons to hunt clean animals such as deer, sheep, goats and fowl, they continued to follow the herds of mammoths, and elephants for their meat. They also lived a degenerate lifestyle in caves, and even became cannibals. Archeology has discovered their remains. The world wrongly labels one line of Cain’s descendants as ‘Neanderthals’ who did not survive Noah’s Flood because they were evil to the extreme.

After Cain and Enoch after whom Cain named his city, the Bible has nothing to say about all the people listed in the genealogies except Lamech, his four children (Jabal, Jubal, Tubal-Cain and Naamah), Enoch, and Noah himself. Something related to their activities is mentioned because they were all world famous individuals, and their activities are key to understanding what went on in the pre-Flood world, and what led God to destroy that society. In addition, names of only four women before the flood are mentioned: Eve, Lamech’s two wives Adah and Zillah, and one of his daughters Naamah. The names of these women are mentioned because they were world famous women.

It should be remembered that God destroyed the pre-Flood world because of violence. And violence originated in the line of Cain. The famous men in the line of Cain were the leading men of violence in that society. This means that Lamech, Jabal, Jubal and Tubalcain were the leading men of violence in the generations just before the Flood.

After Enoch, the names of the next three descendants of Cain are listed simply in Genesis 4:18, “18 To Enoch was born Irad; and Irad begot Mehujael, and Mehujael begot Methushael, and Methushael begot Lamech.” The reason is that they were part of the genealogy of Lamech, but did nothing significant to which God wanted to draw our attention.

Then when the Bible comes to Lamech, seven verses are devoted to seven key individuals in his family: Lamech himself, his two wives Adah and Zillah, his sons Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain and his daughter Naamah. God wants to draw our special attention to them. What was it about these individuals that made them world famous?

Genesis 4:19 states: “And Lamech took unto him two wives: the name of the one was Adah, and the name of the other Zillah.”

Lamech took two wives. He is the first one mentioned in the Bible to have done so. God the originator of marriage created only one wife for Adam. But Lamech became the first bigamist and later polygamist in the history of mankind.

Next Moses recorded Lamech’s famous pre-Flood poem in Genesis 4:23-24. It tells of Lamech’s deeds (NIV): “Lamech said to his wives, Adah and Zillah, listen to me; wives of Lamech, hear my words. I have killed a man for wounding me, a young man for injuring me. If Cain is avenged seven times, then Lamech seventy-seven times.”

God had this poem recorded in scripture for a purpose. It points out Lamech’s true character and estimation of his self-importance. He was a man of VIOLENCE, who declared that he murdered any one who got in his way or tried to hurt him. In his own estimation he was also many times more important than his ancestor Cain. The man he killed for wounding him was none other than Cain, and the young man he killed was his own son Tubal-cain because he felt that his control of the world would be threatened by Tabalcain. According to Jewish tradition, Lamech also most likely had Enoch (Genesis 5:21-24) murdered when God used him to warn Lamech’s family and others for their ungodly deeds. Enoch’s words of prophecy against the ungodly are preserved in Jude 14-15, “14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord comes with ten thousands of his saints, 15 To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against Him.”

The reason why Lamech killed Cain was that both were competing to rule over as many people as possible in order to collect tribute from them. As each tried to increase his influence, it was inevitable that eventually their territories of influence would overlap. To threaten Lamech, Cain probably wounded Lamech. A ten-year long war ensued between the two in which Lamech was victorious and killed his ancestor Cain.

Lamech thus was the leading man of violence in pre-Flood society.

Next we look at Lamech’s two wives and why they were famous. Zillah means ‘shadow’ or ‘darkness.’ Zillah thus is the first black (negro looking) woman recorded, a descendant of Cain. Adah on the other hand means ‘Dawn.’ In the verse, Zillah is contrasted with Adah. Adah was racially white of the white line of Seth. Thus Lamech f the line of Cain also originated inter-racial marriages. Non-white races originated in the line of Cain because of his continually multiplying sins.

Genesis 4:20 mentions Jabal: “And Adah bare Jabal: he was the father of such as dwell in tents, and of such as have cattle.” Jabal did not own just a few score heads of cattle. He owned vast herds of cattle. His descendants also dwelt in tents in order to graze their cattle over vast areas.

Jubal was Jabal’s brother. His main contribution to pre-Flood society is described in Genesis 4:21(NKJV): “…he was the father of all those who play [KJV “handle”] the harp and the flute.” Jubal was a world famous musician and inventor of musical instruments.

Genesis 4:22 describes why Tubalcain was famous: “And Zillah, she also bare Tubal-cain, an instructor of every artificer in brass and iron…” Since he was the son of Zillah, he was a black negro.

Josephus sheds more light on his activities: “But Tubal, one of his [Lamech’s] children by the other wife, exceeded all men in strength, and was very expert and famous in martial [meaning military] performances. He procured what tended to the pleasures of the body by that method; and first of all invented the art of making brass.” (*Antiquities* I, II, 2)

Josephus tells us that Tubalcain (or BAL-CAIN or VUL-CAIN or VULCAN of the Roman myths, known as Hephaestus in the Greek myths) was an expert in military performances. That means he was the first to build an army, develop military strategies and tactics, and use his army to conquer other people for material gain. He was the first to develop the ART OF WAR. He was also an individual of enormous strength, derived from his well-equipped and funded military. Josephus says he ‘exceeded all men in strength.”

Josephus says he was the first to invent the art of making brass. This means that he discovered the art of smelting and extracting metals from ore, producing alloys, which he used for manufacturing WEAPONS of brass and iron to equip his army. And he used that army to conquer much of the world. He was the first to go on a conquering expedition and conquered wherever he went. In addition, he used brass and other alloys to produce very useful household products, which they sold. All this material progress brought immense wealth to Lamech’s family.

As already mentioned, Cain had deified himself and leaders among his followers and called themselves the Titan gods. Lamech and his family also deified themselves and called themselves the Olympian gods. Tubalcain made metal idols of his father and other members of his family and had them installed in temples and demanded that they be worshipped as gods, particularly by those he conquered and his family ruled over. This was the beginning of idol worship in the world.

Then in Genesis 4:22, among possible scores of Lamech’s daughters, only Naamah is mentioned. She was a negro woman as she was the daughter of Zillah. According to Jewish tradition Naamah was famous as a weaver of cloth. She invented a variety of textiles. But Naamah is famous for another very important reason. She did not perish in the Flood. According to Jewish tradition, she survived the Flood as the wife of Ham the son of Noah.

Now we can see why the Bible mentions these seven key individuals in the family of Lamech. They all individually had a major impact on pre-Flood society. They were world famous because they were the richest, ruled over much of humanity, and were the greatest industrialists of their day.

Lamech and his family still hated the true God and would have nothing to do with Him. After Cain was killed, they continued to widen their influence forcing the rest of humanity to pay tribute. They deified themselves as gods, set up metal idols of themselves and demanded that they be worshipped by the people. Their deified names have come down to us through the Greek, Roman and Indian myths. (Later we will explain how ancient history was mythologized.) Today we know Lamech as the god Jupiter of the Romans, Zeus of the Greeks and Indra of the Indians, Jabal as the most ancient Hercules, Jubal the musician as the god Apollo, Tubalcain the inventor of the art of smelting to extract metals from ore as Vulcan of the Romans and Hephaestus of the Greeks, and their sister Naamah as the goddess Athena of the Greeks, Minerva of the Romans and Kaali Maa (meaning black mother) of the Hindus.

They were not content merely to have the rest of humanity worship them. They also under the threat of violence, torture and death forced the rest of humanity to stop worshipping the true God, as taught by Noah, other preachers of righteousness among the racially white line of Seth that preceded Noah. They forced interracial marriages to mix the races and turn people away from worship of the true God; themselves setting the example by taking scores of wives and mistresses.

Their influence had become so great that Lamech is the only human being in man’s history who seems to have come close to ruling the entire world. Conditions had reached such a stage that only Noah and his wife, were left racially white, and only Noah refused to give up the worship of the true God.

Because of inter-racial marriages, polygamy, and the activities of many men like Cain, Lamech, Tubal-cain, and after their death, others who were trying to conquer and rule the world, the world was filled with violence. As a result, God decided to destroy everything on land in a Flood and save only Noah, his racially pure three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth and their four wives. But first God commissioned Noah to warn all of humanity to repent, or they would all be drowned in a Flood. When Noah began preaching, Lamech threatened Noah and sought to kill him as he had earlier probably killed Enoch for preaching repentance. Noah had to flee to Egypt to protect himself and his family.

Noah continued preaching his message of repentance to the world from Egypt, preaching for a total of about 100 years. Lamech then died of old age. But after his death conditions on earth became manifold worse. Many strong men around the world started fighting each other to increase their influence. There was no one to enforce the rule of law. The strong men killed innocent people at whim, and some did it even for sport. Can you imagine tens of thousands of strong men vying for control of as many people as they could through force and intimidation, challenging, fighting and killing each other in individual combat in order to extract tribute from them? The result was that the world had become saturated with violence, and the thought of every human being was only evil continually. These strongmen also wanted to be worshipped as gods and forced others to stop worshipping the true God.

God described these conditions before the Flood in Genesis 6:1-13: “And it came to pass, when men began to multiply on the face of the earth [there was a population explosion], and daughters were born unto them, 2 That the sons of God [actually the word translated God is elohim which is a uniplural noun, like the word family. The correct translation would be ‘sons of gods.’ The word elohim can refer to the true God as well as false gods] saw the daughters of men that they were fair; and they took them wives of all which they chose. [These sons of gods were the descendants of Lamech who had deified themselves. They were forcibly marrying fair (meaning white) women, because they themselves were non-white. These were world famous men before the Flood who were marrying all the women they wanted, resulting in rampant polygamy.]…

“4 There were giants in the earth in those days [This was a race of men called Nephilim, descendants of Cain, who did not survive the Flood. But archaeology has found their remains and they are known as Neanderthals]; and also after that, when the sons of God [these sons of gods were descendants of the line of Lamech, different from the giants or Nephilim] came in unto the daughters of men, and they bare children to them, the same became mighty men which were of old, men of renown. 5 And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. 6 And it repented the Lord that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.7 So the Lord said, “I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth, both man and beast, creeping thing and birds of the air, for I am sorry that I have made them.” 8 But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. 9 This is the genealogy of Noah. Noah was a just man, perfect in his generations [this means that Noah was the only one left racially white from the time of Adam and Eve]. Noah walked with God. 10 And Noah begot three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

“11 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence [the earth was saturated with violence]. 12 And God looked upon the earth, and, behold, it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted his way upon the earth. 13 And God said unto Noah, The end of all flesh is come before me; for the earth is filled with violence through them; and, behold, I will destroy them with the earth.”

Humanity had no fear of God. There were no consequences for their lawless deeds.  The death penalty had not been instituted by God. They murdered whom they willed with no one to bring them to justice. Many thought God does not exist and felt they could get away with anything. Animals were tame before the Flood and there were no natural disasters to put fear in man. The conditions described just before the Flood occurred because many of these men became criminals by about age one hundred and continued getting worse, becoming hardened in their crimes, wickedness and violence for 700-800 years more. Mankind truly lived in utter misery, fear of deadly violence, and slavery to one another.

After Lamech’s death, Noah returned to Mesopotamia from Egypt and began building the ark, and continued preaching God’s message of repentance and warning to those who gathered around to see the progress of his great project. He also visited many places to issue his warnings about the approaching Flood. When no one repented, God drowned them all in the Flood. Perhaps one can appreciate why God drowned that entire world because of its wickedness, because they will all be a sobered bunch when God resurrects them again to a physical life in the second resurrection and gives them one more chance to repent and accept His way of life as the only way that can produce happiness, joy, peace, harmony and prosperity for all creation.

**Why Natural Disasters**

God reacted to man’s attitude of no fear of anything that led to extreme wickedness and changed conditions after the Flood.

Notice the last part of Genesis 6:13: “behold, I will destroy them [men] with the earth.”

‘Destroy the earth’ means that after the Flood the geology and topography of the earth changed. God’s purpose in doing so was to allow natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes, tsunamis, tornadoes, floods, famines, droughts etc to occur so that man would be occasionally reminded that there are many things beyond their control and that there is a higher Power than them and would fear. The natural disasters force mankind to acknowledge the existence of a Higher Power that could bring them to justice for their crimes. It restrains evil so that humans don’t become hardened criminals like those before the Flood.

Much of the earth remains covered in permafrost, and the geology of the earth has also produced large desert and mountainous areas which are not accessible for food production. Only about 10-15 percent of the earth’s land surface is cultivatable.

Further evidence of the destruction of conditions on earth which were conducive to good human health is that life span of human beings decreased from around 1000 years before the Flood to about 70 years today. Conditions on earth are simply not conducive to human health and longevity. We age and grow old quickly and die.

Of course, so-called German rationalism has made us all believe that the human life span of about 1000 years before the Flood is a myth. But paleontology [which is a science dealing with the life of past geological periods as known from fossil remains] and historical evidence has provided proof that human beings had very long lives at one time.

Paleontology shows that one striking characteristic of the oldest human fossil remains is the extreme longevity characteristic of the skeletons. Sir J. William Dawson writes:

“Another point which strikes us in reading the descriptions of these skeletons is the indication which they seem to present of an extreme longevity. The massive proportions of the body, the great development of the muscular processes, the EXTREME WEARING OF THE TEETH…THE OBLITERATION OF THE SUTURES OF THE SKULL [seams between the various bones of the skull], along with SLOW OSSIFICATION of the ends of the long bones, point in this direction, and seem to indicate a SLOW MATURITY and GREAT LENGTH OF LIFE in this most primitive race” (*The Meeting Place of Geology and History*” by Sir J. William Dawson, pp. 62-63).

These scientific findings do not prove the theory of evolution but support the biblical record that ancients lived close to 1000 years.

Besides the Bible, ancient writers also testify that men lived nearly a thousand years. Josephus mentions this in *Antiquities* I, III, 9: “Now I have for witnesses to what I have said, all those that have written Antiquities, both among the Greeks and barbarians; for even Manetho, who wrote the Egyptian History, and Berosus, who collected the Chaldean Monuments, and Mochus, and Hestieus, and, besides these, Hieronymus the Egyptian, and those who composed the Phoenician History, agree to what I here say: Hesiod also, and Hecatseus, Hellanicus, and Acusilaus; and, besides these, Ephorus and Nicolaus relate that the ancients lived a thousand years.”

How could these early historians have been sure that the ancients had very long lives?  Because Noah and his descendants in the early years after the Flood for 4 generations lived more than 400 years! Shem the son of Noah lived to be 600 years old. Egyptian history records that Shem was a very old high priest. Noah after the Flood died at age 950 years. After the Flood, most peoples around the world maintained king lists which showed the early kings lived long lives. This is recorded history of many peoples on earth after the Flood which is available today. So, they knew for a fact through Noah and his sons, Shem, Ham and Japheth and their wives that those before the Flood lived more than 900 years.

What caused the life spans of human beings to decline after the Flood? After the Flood the earth was very different. Changes in the climate, composition of the atmosphere, loss of water canopy, changes in the geology of the earth, kind of radiation reaching the earth, along with possibly genetic changes wrought by God and other natural factors were responsible for a rapid decline in the life spans of humans and animals. These changes in the earth that shortened human life spans (God had prophesied before the Flood that human life span would be reduced to 120 years in Genesis 6:3, “3 And the Lord said, “My Spirit shall not strive with man forever, for he is indeed flesh; yet his days shall be one hundred and twenty years.”); the destructive forces of nature such as earthquakes, hurricanes, tsunamis, floods, draughts, tornadoes; only about 10-15 percent of the earth’s land being cultivatable are ongoing fulfillment of God’s prophecy that He would destroy man with the earth.

God allows humans to die in natural disasters, because He knows He will make them alive once more in a resurrection in the future, as He will resurrect those who died in the Flood. Yes, God can kill and make alive (Deuteronomy 32:39, “ See now that I, even I, am he, and there is no god with me: I kill, and I make alive; I wound, and I heal: neither is there any that can deliver out of my hand.” That’s why He ‘destroyed’ the earth in the Flood to allow natural disasters to occur.

Only an Almighty God who has total control over the universe, the earth and everything in it could prophesy these great events before and at the time of the Flood and continue to uphold His prophecies for nearly 6,000 years now. Such prophecies are recorded only in the Bible, proving that its words are backed by the power of Almighty God.

**Conditions after the Flood**

Noah, his wife, his three sons Shem, Ham and Japheth were all racially white. Shem had married a white wife. But Japheth married an oriental looking woman, a descendant of Cain, and Ham had married the negro Naamah, the famous daughter of Lamech, also a descendant of Cain. That’s how the three basic races, white, black and oriental, were preserved through the Flood.

After the Flood, Noah instructed his family in God’s way of life, but Naamah who was worshipped as a goddess (Athena, or Minerva) herself before the Flood instructed her black children in the way their family had lived and ruled the world before the Flood. That excited the fancy of her descendants and many others to rule the world. Japheth’s wife instructed her children in the way of life of ancestor worship that her family followed before the Flood.

Then as already described, the incident of Noah inadvertently getting drunk and Canaan the son of Ham and Naamah committing a perverted act with him occurred. This led Noah to pronounce a curse on Canaan, and prophesy about the future of the three races of his family.

Before the Flood Lamech had ruled almost the entire world! Because of interracial marriages, the world had become filled with violence. God wanted to prevent one man from ruling the world again and prevent interracial marriages because it led to violence. One way God accomplished this was to create mountain ranges and oceans that would prevent people from attacking each other and ruling over others to some degree, as they would have to cross these natural barriers. Another way God sought to accomplish this was to have different races settle down in different areas of the earth. So, God gave Noah a plan to colonize different areas of the earth. This would separate the various races, and each would develop their own civilization, and not try to force their rule over others. Each of the nations would be the descendants of the same patriarch, which would also be another factor in reducing violence.

Noah took a ten-year long journey with his sons to different areas to explore lands to send colonies to. While they were gone, Ham’s son Cush, which means black, about 80 years old at that time and married with children, probably seduced and raped or had an illegal relationship with the strikingly beautiful about 20-year old white young girl named Semiramis, a great granddaughter of Japheth. She became pregnant and the black Nimrod was born to her as a result of that relationship. This is indicated in how the sons of Cush are mentioned in Genesis 10:7-8, “7 And the sons of Cush; Seba, and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabtechah: and the sons of Raamah; Sheba, and Dedan. 8 And Cush begat Nimrod:” Notice, first the sons of Cush are listed by his wife. Then the record just says Cush also begot Nimrod. He is not described as a son like Cush’s other children.

When Noah returned from his journey, he refused to let Cush marry Semiramis, and because he was already married to his black sister, probably with straight hair like Indians, and had children by her. Noah simply was not going to allow conditions to develop as they had developed before the Flood due to forced interracial marriages.

At that time wild animals multiplied faster than human beings because they produce young much earlier than humans, and began to threaten the tiny human population. Nimrod the physically powerful young black son of Cush and Semiramis rose to the occasion and began to protect humans from wild animals. He began to organize hunting parties to hunt and kill wild animals which drove them away from human habitations. Thus, Nimrod began to be looked upon as a ‘savior’ of mankind.

Noah then began to implement God’s plan and send out colonies to different areas of the earth. But Cush, Nimrod, Semiramis, and Shem’s son Asshur and a majority of humanity rebelled against God’s colonization plan. They refused to go to their assigned territories. Instead they separated from Noah and those loyal to him and went to the land of Shinar in modern day Iraq and set up their own civilization. Thus, after the Flood rebellion against God and Noah was led by the black part of the human family, though they had white and oriental followers as well.

These rebels began to hate the true God and in rebellion set up their own god, the Sun-Fire-Serpent god. The sun represented the sun which gave light and warmth and caused crops to grow. The serpent represented Satan, who according to their thinking had enlightened mankind with knowledge in the Garden of Eden. The fire was added as a representation of the sun on earth. They developed their own pagan worship system, built a high tower as a sanctuary for worship and began building a city. Cush and Nimrod became the high priests of the god they had set up.

Cush and Nimrod were also basically rebelling against not being allowed to marry whomever they wanted, mainly white women. Now they were free from Noah’s influence and again began to force interracial marriages among those who followed them.

Just as Nimrod’s great grandfather and Cush’s grandfather Lamech had done before the Flood, they too began to develop plans to rule all of humanity, and make the world of one race, one religion [their religion] and one society, under their control. To accomplish that they would probably have to assassinate Noah, his loyal son Shem and those with them who would refuse to come under their rule.

When God saw their plans, He decided to intervene. He confused the language of mankind and destroyed the Tower (Genesis 11:1-9). Because of confusion of language men could no longer freely communicate with everyone, but only with those of their own race. They were thus forced to separate by race and move away from the city they were building.

After the destruction of the Tower and confusion of language, Cush, Nimrod and Semiramis began to pick up the pieces of their empire. They still continued to pursue their goal of controlling the entire world population. At that time the population of the world had reached only about 5,000 souls. Slightly less than half that number were loyal to Noah and Shem and had started going out in colonies as instructed by them. But they had not travelled far. So, the population of the world was still concentrated around the Middle East, in and around the land of Israel, Iraq, coasts of the Mediterranean in Egypt, other parts of North Africa and Europe.

The implications of the destruction of the Tower and the confusion of language were not lost on those in the Cush and Nimrod camp. They knew that the destruction of their project was from God, and they noticed that the language they could understand was only of those of their race, according to the division Noah had made for colonizing the earth. This caused a division in the Cush and Nimrod camp. Asshur the white son of Shem separated himself and built Nineveh to the north of the cities Cush and Nimrod were building. This is described in Genesis 10:10-12: “10 And the beginning of his [that is, Nimrod’s] kingdom was Babel [meaning Babylon], and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. 11 Out of that land went forth Asshur, and builded Nineveh, and the city of Rehoboth, and Calah. And Resen between Nineveh and Calah: the same is a great city.” However, Asshur and his descendants at that time still were part of Nimrod’s empire, and worked with him, under his rule.

For the efficient working of people on their projects of building cities, places of worship and growing food, Cush [the Menes of Egypt and known as Manu in the Indian scriptures] had organized all the workers in their camps according to the tasks performed by them, as he determined what their ‘aptitude’ was. But this division of labor was rigid. Those working on growing food would always remain in agriculture and they and their descendants would not be allowed to change their work to construction and building. Those assigned the task of keeping the cities clean would always attend to that task. Cush and Nimrod enforced their rigid division of labor on all. The people could not choose what tasks they wanted to perform according to what they enjoyed or had an aptitude for. Such division was passed along to the children also as they grew up.

The system Cush had originated which he and Nimrod enforced became highly oppressive. The people could not get away from it though many longed to do so, because of the fear of being killed for their rebellion. But others still did not forget the deliverance brought to them by Nimrod from wild animals and remained loyal to him, accepting their oppressive division of labor.

The ancient Jewish historian Josephus describes the result of the policies of Cush and Nimrod in *Antiquities* I, IV, 2: “He [that is Nimrod] also gradually changed the government into Tyranny…seeing no other way of turning men away from the fear of God, but to bring them into a constant dependence on his power…” This was the nature of the merciless, brutal, oppressive, freedom-less regime that was developing in Babylon.

We see the continuation of this horrible and oppressive system in the development of the rigid caste system in India and to some extent in Egypt. The straight-haired dark Indians were Cush’s descendants. Raamah the son of Cush mentioned in Genesis 10:7 is none other than the Rama of Ramayana who was deified by his descendants. And Nimrod is being worshipped in India as Krishna. Both the Mahabharata and the Ramayana glorify the caste system developed by Cush, the father of both Rama and Nimrod.

Cush, Nimrod and Semiramis continued to develop their worship system opposed to the worship of the true God. At this time for the first time in human history Nimrod introduced live human and infant sacrifices in his worship system. The live humans being sacrificed were probably those who rebelled against Nimrod’s religion, but were later captured.

Some evidence of human and infant sacrifices instituted by Nimrod can be found in the practice of Sati in India before the 19th century A.D., which is the wife jumping alive into the fire that is cremating her dead husband and immolating herself. Such evil practices are glorified in the Hindu scriptures. The British had to outlaw the practice of Sati in India to end it in the 19th century.

Other evidence of infant sacrifice by burning alive comes from the Bible itself. Nimrod was later deified as the god Baal. The Canaanites were Baal or Nimrod worshippers and infant sacrifices, i.e. burning them alive in the fire, was one of their practices. That is why God ordered the Israelites to exterminate them. But part of the population of ancient Israel ended up adopting their practices.

Here is a quote from *“The Two Babylons”* by Alexander Hyslop from pp. 192-193 on infant sacrifices to Baal:

“As the Father of the gods, he was, as we have seen, called Kronos [Cain’s name in the myths]; and every one knows that the classical story of Kronos was just this, that, "he devoured his sons as soon as they were born." Such is the analogy between type and antitype. This legend has a further and deeper meaning; but, as applied to Nimrod, or "The Horned One," it just refers to the fact, that, as the representative of Moloch or Baal, infants were the most acceptable offerings at his altar. We have ample and melancholy evidence on this subject from the records of antiquity. "The Phenicians," says Eusebius, "every year sacrificed their beloved and only-begotten children to Kronos or Saturn, and the Rhodians also often did the same." Diodorus Siculus states that the Carthaginians, on one occasion, when besieged by the Sicilians, and sore pressed, in order to rectify, as they supposed, their error in having somewhat departed from the ancient custom of Carthage, in this respect, hastily "chose out two hundred of the noblest of their children, and publicly sacrificed them" to this god. There is reason to believe that the same practice obtained in our own land in the times of the Druids. We know that they offered human sacrifices to their bloody gods. We have evidence that they made "their children pass through the fire to Moloch," and that makes it highly probable that they also offered them in sacrifice; for, from Jeremiah 32:35, compared with Jeremiah 19:5, we find that these two things were parts of one and the same system. The god whom the Druids worshipped was Baal, as the blazing Baal-fires show, and the last-cited passage proves that children were offered in sacrifice to Baal. When "the fruit of the body" was thus offered, it was "for the sin of the soul." And it was a principle of the Mosaic law, a principle no doubt derived from the patriarchal faith, that the priest must partake of whatever was offered as a sin-offering (Num 18:9,10). Hence, the priests of Nimrod or Baal were necessarily required to eat of the human sacrifices; and thus it has come to pass that "Cahna-Bal," the "Priest of Baal," is the established word in our own tongue for a devourer of human flesh.”

Can you imagine the hideous religious practices of these pagans? How would you feel if you were forced to give up your infant to be burnt alive as a sacrifice to the pagan god Baal or the Sun-fire-serpent god? But Nimrod had convinced the people that the purpose of infant sacrifice was “purification of the soul.” Such was the tyrannical rule of Nimrod.

Cush and Nimrod continued to promote and force interracial marriages. Evidence of forced interracial marriages can be found all over the world. Much of the oriental looking Japhethites had joined Cush and Nimrod in their rebellion. Evidence of their mixing with blacks can be found in South and Southeast China, Tibet, Nepal, Southeast Asia, among Native Americans in north, but particularly South America.  Many in the pure white line of Arphaxad were lured to become priests with huge grants of lands and tax free status. They were also forced to mix with the black and yellow races. Their mixed descendants are the Brahmins of India and others are mixed among the Egyptians. Later interracial mixing has also continued to occur.

**Rebellion against the Rule of Cush and Nimrod**

The camps of Noah, and Cush and Nimrod were not completely isolated. There was movement between them. Some escaped the camp of Cush and Nimrod to join up with Noah’s camp, while others who had gone out in colonies came and settled in Cush and Nimrod’s camp. One such person was Magog, the ancestor of the Chinese people, the son of Japheth. He and his descendants had gone out as colonists as instructed by Noah. They were allotted the land of China and were given maps by Noah on how to get there. This is not fiction. These maps were made by the Creator Himself and given to Noah as proved in the second volume of my book on ancient history.

Magog and his children took the north route to get to China over many centuries. But because of the cold conditions during their journeys Magog decided with a part of his children to seek out the camp of Cush and Nimrod, as he had heard they were building cities to live in where life would be more comfortable.

Magog soon got a taste of the brutal and oppressive conditions there. He objected to the forced interracial marriages of his descendants with the blacks. As a result, he was imprisoned by Nimrod. This eventually led most of the descendants of Japheth to rebel against the rule of Cush and Nimrod. As this resistance from the Japhethites got stronger over the years, Cush saw the handwriting on the wall. He departed for Ethiopia with his children with curly hair along with Semiramis to the land allotted to him by Noah according to God’s plan. Nimrod tried to maintain his empire in Babylon alone, but as the children of Japheth got stronger and stronger, he too was forced out and went to Egypt. Two years later his father Cush disappears from Egyptian history, presumably murdered by his illegitimate son Nimrod and his mother and later wife Semiramis.

For the next 28 years Nimrod and Semiramis continued to propagate their pagan religion among the descendants of Ham in Africa, as well as the Canaanites. Nimrod likely also travelled and propagated his religion among the other sons of Cush with the straight hair who were still around the Middle East, but were destined to end up in India according to the allotment made for them in God’s colonization plan. He had also started making inroads into Italy, Spain and areas along the shores of the Mediterranean in Europe where some of the fairer descendants of Japheth had settled at that time. But these were areas where Shem was active. At this stage, probably God decided Nimrod should be executed for his many crimes including live human and infant sacrifices. This is the first execution in the history of mankind, probably ordered directly by God through Noah.

At that time Nimrod was in Egypt. Shem immediately set about the task. He came to Egypt from Europe and convinced 70 princes in Egypt and surrounding areas to join him in bringing Nimrod to justice. As soon as Nimrod got word of the plan, he wasted no time and attacked Shem and those with him. Nimrod and his forces were defeated, and he fled to Italy. Shem followed him and found him after a year, executed him, cut off his body into pieces and sent the pieces to different areas of the population which was still all mainly in the Middle East as a warning against apostatizing. Noah was still alive and well at that time and would live about 150 more years.

Thus, after the Flood, the black part of the human family led the rebellion against God.  Now perhaps we can appreciate why God prophesied the future of the three races through Noah the way He did. Even after the Flood, the black part of the human family ruled a majority of mankind. Over the centuries they were to lose their influence. If God had continued to let them materially prosper and rule the rest of mankind with force, they would have driven all of humanity away from the true God and forced everyone to marry interracially. The result would have been the same as before the Flood: worldwide violence, corruption and bloodshed.

After Nimrod was executed, a fear fell on the entire world population, which at that time was small and concentrated largely in and around the Middle East, north Africa and southern Europe, around the shores of the Mediterranean Sea. They could no longer openly worship their false Sun-fire-serpent god for fear of being executed. After Nimrod’s execution, Semiramis fled to the delta region of Egypt, and from there to Babylon. The world population at that time was only around 90,000.

At that time Noah left Armenia and took a 115-year long journey to visit the colonists he had sent to inquire about their welfare. When he reached Egypt, he saw that his descendants there were living a degenerate life style. He spent 50 years there, countering the pagan teachings of Cush, Nimrod, Semiramis and his own son Ham who by that time had been thoroughly corrupted by his wife Naamah. Noah’s work with the Egyptians was to lay the foundation of Egypt’s greatness in the centuries following.

Meanwhile Semiramis fled to Babylon and had an illegitimate son with Ninus II the son of Asshur and named him Horus. She soon returned to Egypt with her young son and reigned there. Horus subsequently became the ruler in Egypt. She continued to develop and propagate her pagan religion from Egypt.

Because of the fear of being executed for propagating paganism, Semiramis now began developing her Mystery religion, which later would become known as the Babylonian Mystery Religion as it was developed in Babylon. In this religion they outwardly worshipped objects such as trees, and creatures such as the bull, but those initiated in the mysteries knew exactly what they were worshipping. Bull worship was Nimrod worship and tree worship (which has come down to our time as the Christmas tree) was actually worship of Semiramis. Since Nimrod was worshipped as a bull or calf, his mother Semiramis would obviously be worshipped as a cow. That is the origin of cow worship among the Hindus in India.

Those not initiated in the mysteries just obeyed the priests in their worship without really knowing what they were worshipping. Over the centuries even the priests forgot what they were actually worshipping, but concocted reasons such as the cow being a gentle, useful and giving creature to justify the worship to their followers. They continue to follow traditions and worship cows, trees and other objects even today.

It seems at this time Satan and the demons for the first time understood the very first prophecy given in the Bible in Genesis 3:15 (NKJV): “And I [that is God] will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed, it shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise his heel.”

This is actually a prophecy of the woman’s Seed coming to earth to redeem mankind from death, making eternal life possible. That promised Seed was Jesus Christ. Satan bruising his heel was understood to mean that Satan would cause Him to be put to death. But He would bruise Satan’s head by defeating him and ending his rule on earth.

It seems Satan then immediately began developing a counterfeit religion through Semiramis centered around this prophecy. Nimrod was already considered a savior of mankind for having saved humans from wild animals. Now Semiramis deified him as the promised Seed of the woman sent to save mankind. She claimed he had been killed to save mankind. She then deified herself as the Mother of the Savior and began to be worshipped. She then began to claim that her son Horus had been supernaturally conceived by a spirt and was the reborn Nimrod, and deified him as a god. That is how worship of the Madonna and Child originated with Semiramis soon after the Flood. It did not originate with the sacrifice of Jesus Christ. The Bible nowhere tells us that Mary is to be worshipped in any way. Worship of the Madonna and Child in mainstream Christianity is an ancient tradition going back above 2000 years before the birth of Jesus Christ, foisted on Christianity by the great false Church based in Rome.

All the false worship traditions, customs and festivals such as Christmas and Easter of modern Christianity are nowhere mentioned or required to be celebrated in the Bible. Our modern word Easter comes from the name “Ishtar” which was the Assyrian name of Semiramis. Worship of the Trinity, the cross, hot cross buns of Easter, colored eggs and rabbits, the tree of Christmas, worship of the bull, calf and cow, worship of the Sun god on Sunday, worship of relics, start of the new year in the dead of winter, all originated with Semiramis soon after the Flood and have been foisted on a gullible Christianity by the false Church. Worship of idols had originated before the Flood and remained an important part of the religion originated by Semiramis.

The relics of human and infant sacrifices can be found in our Christmas celebrations. Notice the following chilling quote from the *Dictionary of Greek and Roman Antiquities,* “Oscilla” 3rd edition, volume II: “…all ranks devoted themselves to feasting and mirth, presents were exchanged among friends, and crowds thronged the streets, shouting ‘Lo Saturnalia.’ An offering was made beneath a decorated evergreen tree, according to the pagan poet, Virgil. Figurines and masks—called ‘oscilla’—were hung on the tree, as are Christmas decorations today. History admits… there can be no doubt that we have in these ‘oscilla’ a relic of human sacrifice…”

**How Ancient History was Mythologized**

Semiramis also told the people that just as Nimrod had emancipated the people from the ‘restrictive’ ways of God, Nimrod in his reborn form as Horus would continue to liberate mankind from the ways of God.

With her lie, Semiramis, the Queen of Heaven, received the acclaim and adoration of the world as the Virgin Mother of the savior of mankind. Thus her hold over the people was strengthened. The three of them, the husband (Nimrod), the wife (Semiramis), and her illegitimate son (Horus), came to be worshipped in many symbolic forms, under many Babylonian names, and other different names in other countries in their languages. Nimrod began to be worshipped as the Egyptian Osiris, the Grecian Bacchus and the Babylonian Tammuz. Semiramis was worshipped as the Egyptian Isis, Grecian Ceres, Assyrian Ishtar, and the Babylonian Beltis, and Horus as the son. Her system has been perpetuated by monks, nuns, and celibate priests in churches down to our days, and by the Brahmins in India!

These events took place during Semiramis' 30 year exile from Egypt, beginning in 2122, after Nimrod had been slain. When she returned to Egypt with Horus in 2092, she presented him as the reborn son. Further innovations in the Mystery system would continue till the end of her life.

Question arises: How was Semiramis so successful in having her lies so readily accepted by the people? Her plan was certainly aided by her own incredible beauty. Her beauty is said to have once quelled a rising rebellion among her subjects when she suddenly appeared among them (Valerius Maximus, *Library* ix, chap. 3, p. 2).

Semiramis also had supernatural (demonic) help in enhancing her credibility. Nimrod was said to have been the first who invented the magic arts. He used magic tricks (Justinius Historia, Library i, Vol. ii, p. 615) to impress the people as the high priest of the Sun-serpent-fire god. No one seems to have used magic arts before the Flood. Nimrod was the first to use them. After Nimrod's death, Semiramis used magic tricks such as levitating objects, to impress the converts to her Mysteries system. She claimed to be able to perform such acts with the power of the imaginary gods that she had concocted (the deified pre-Flood members of Lamech’s family). The magic tricks, of course, were performed by demons to build up her credibility.

The meaning of the Mysteries had to be first explained to those who wished to be initiated into them. The title of the priest who did so was “Peter” in ancient Chaldee, the original language of these Mysteries. The title means “Interpreter”. One of these “Peters” or interpreters of Babylonian Mysteries was in pagan Rome and has been confused with the apostle Peter, who was never the Bishop of Rome

**Kings of the Earth Spread Mystery System**

When the system was initiated, Semiramis was in exile from Egypt and hiding in Babylon-Assyria. They were the first people to learn about her system. The first priests of the system were the Chaldeans in Babylonia.

The Assyrian rulers in the early days knew that the Mysteries system was a hoax, because they knew that Horus was the illegitimate son of Ninus II, and was not begotten by a spirit. But having accepted Satan's way of lying and deception themselves, they played along with Semiramis initially. However, successive generations lost the knowledge of the truth, as well as why the mysteries originated. When opposition to the system in Shem's old age ended, the Mysteries were no longer being explained to the initiates. So the knowledge of their origins was lost to the people. They just retained the worship system.

At the end of the 30 years Semiramis felt it safe to return to Egypt with her son Horus. She was to spend the next 54 years in Egypt. The Egyptians and North Africans were then the next people to learn and accept her Mystery religion. That is where all the population in Africa was located in this early post-Flood period. Horus would be instrumental in spreading the religion in Europe with the help of the Chaldean priests that he took to Europe with him.

When Semiramis was in Egypt, she carried out three projects simultaneously. First she was engaged in propagating her Babylonian Mystery religion. In the second project, she wrote down pre-Flood history as Naamah (who lived in North Africa with her husband Ham) had transmitted to Cush, Nimrod and herself, which included the deeds of Lamech as Zeus or Jupiter or Indra of the Hindus, Jabal as Hercules, Jubal as Apollo, Tubalcain as Vulcan/Dionysius/Bacchus/Hephaestus, Naamah as Athena or Minerva, and the others in Lamech's famous family, as well as their ancestors Cain, Adam and Eve. They were written down as the deeds of the gods, certainly in much embellished form, attributing supernatural deeds to them. That is why Babylonians, Egyptians, Assyrians, Indians, Greeks and Romans have so many gods in their pantheons of gods. Since the dating of these deeds of the gods was not maintained by Semiramis and the priests that succeeded her, later priests as well as historians were unable to sort out whether they were pre-Flood or post-Flood characters.

The third project she started under Satan's influence was the process of confusing pre-Flood history, by mythologizing it. The purpose was that if the pre-Flood history could be confused as myths, and made somewhat unbelievable, then Satan could continue to use the same strategies as he used before the Flood to deceive mankind. This project was initiated earlier by Nimrod, Cush and Semiramis assuming the names of pre-Flood gods such as Dionysius, Saturn, Aphrodite etc. and ascribing their deeds to themselves and writing them as post-Flood history. After many centuries even ancient historians would be confused about the correct chronological and geographical setting of these gods or 'heroes'. They would not know if they lived before or after the Flood. This process of confusing pre-Flood history would be the initial stages of the process of ultimately mythologizing it. Semiramis herself assumed the name of Aphrodite, or Isis. This written history was entrusted to the priests for preservation and propagation, who because of the financial advantage it brought them (because they had tax-free huge land grants, the offerings of the people to whatever extent they could extract in the guise of religion, and other privileges granted to them by Semiramis – Genesis 47:22) perpetuated the system through the millennia following. They added more fantastic tales to the deeds of these 'gods' and 'goddesses' over the following centuries to make these flesh and blood humans appear to be gods with supernatural powers.

Nimrod and Semiramis were definitely demon possessed though not all the time. Here is proof.

Nimrod is listed as the second Chinese king in their ‘*Canon of History*.’ It states, “His eyes had double pupils, whence he was named “Double Brightness” [meaning his eyes shown with double brightness.] He had a large mouth..and a black body.” That is describing a demon-possessed black man. He is also described as a foreigner.

The Egyptian name for Nimrod was Osiris. Diodorus in his ‘*Historical Library*’ on p. 19 says: “Osiris in the Greek language signifies a thing with many eyes…viewing and surveying the whole land and sea. Osiris is also called Dionysius, and is described as “Dionysius darts his fiery eyes.” Again this describes a demon possessed man.

Only a demon-possessed man and woman, Nimrod and Semiramis could have initiated human and infant sacrifices in their worship system. And only a demon-possessed man like Nimrod could make the boasts that Krishna makes in the Gita.

The initial corruption and mythologizing of history was done by Semiramis over about a 180 year period. She lived a total of about 300 years. After her the Brahmins of India and priests in Egypt and Europe carried on the task.

Later corruption and mythologizing was done by demon possessed Greek poets. Here is proof that they were demon-possessed. Cicero wrote, “Democritus denies that any one can be a great poet, unless he is mad.” The Greek theory of inspirations best described in “Ion”: “It is not by art, but by being inspired and possessed, that all good epic poets produce their beautiful poems…even so the melic poets are not in their right mind when they are composing their beautiful strains.”

That tells us that Homer and Virgil were demented poets. Only demented people could mythologize history the way Homer and other Greek poets did. Indian mythology in the Mahabharata and the Ramayana is worse than that. Therefore, there can be no doubt that Vyasa the compiler of the Mahabharata and Valmiki, the writer of the Ramayana were demented writers.

Thus under Satan's influence, Semiramis was involved in much more than just the Babylonian Mysteries. She was working on many projects simultaneously, including mythologizing ancient pre-Flood and early post-Flood history, which was transmitted through the centuries by the priests as mainly they were the literate people and keepers of records.

Semiramis was the perfect vehicle for Satan to use in popularizing and spreading throughout the world all these worship systems he had now initiated: worship of the Sun-serpent-fire god; the Babylonian Mystery religion with the deification of Nimrod, herself and Horus, which included the worship of the Mother and Child; and worship of the deified pre-Flood individuals (who called themselves gods) such as Cain, Lamech and his family. She was fluent in all the major languages of that time among the rebels: Chaldee, Assyrian, Egyptian, Ethiopian and perhaps others as well. That is why she could very effectively spread her pagan religion around the world.

Though Satan started many worship systems for different purposes such as ancestor worship and idol worship– which made no sense if one was looking for a coherent system of worship (which Indians have inherited) – his masterstroke was the Babylonian Mystery religion. The reason was that after this system was developed, he did not have to invent any other as he could add details to the system as needed to provide perfect counterfeits to God's system of worship, as recorded in the Bible. Therefore, his main effort was directed towards spreading the Mystery religion.

Satan was to leave no stone unturned in using Semiramis to perpetuate the Mystery religion. From Egypt he led her back to Babylon – Assyria to use her to spread the system worldwide. In approximately 2038 BCE, Semiramis returned to Babylon, never to go back to Egypt again. Since the destruction of the Tower, not a single ruling dynasty originated in the Babylon city-precincts for 1000 years. But Semiramis now made it the headquarters of her religion, and started building the city of Babylon into a magnificent city at this time.

At this point in time, the population of the whole world had barely crossed the one million mark. Though Noah had sent colonists along the Mediterranean coast, most of the rebels' families were still living close to Babylon, from where they had earlier separated according to their languages after the departure of Nimrod for Egypt. They had started migrating outwards from Babylon. The family patriarchs had become petty kings over their descendants. For many of these kings Nimrod had built cities or towns. That is why Nimrod and Semiramis had received one of their many titles as builders after they were deified. Satan was now to lead Semiramis to use these kings to spread his Babylonian Mystery religion around the world.

How did Semiramis use these kings to spread her Mystery religion and further her ambition to rule the kingdom Nimrod had founded? The Bible provides the amazing answer.

Semiramis, the wife of Nimrod was the original fallen woman described in the Bible in Rev. 17:1-5:

"Come…I will show you the judgment of the great whore that sits upon many waters [symbol for nations]: with whom the kings of the earth have committed fornication, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her fornication…And the woman was arrayed in purple and scarlet color, and decked with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand full of abominations and filthiness of her fornication: And upon her forehead was a name written, MYSTERY, BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF HARLOTS AND ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH."

Semiramis' character regarding fornication/adultery had become well known. Nimrod was her illegitimate son, whom she also married in Egypt. She spent 30 years in exile from Egypt in Babylon and Assyria. There her illegitimate son Horus was born. She initiated the Babylonian Mystery religion there as well. Now back in Babylon from Egypt, Semiramis was free from the shackles of her marriage to Cush first and then Nimrod. This is the time when her unbridled lust came to the fore. Since she did not marry after Nimrod's death, she may have continued her fornication activities in Egypt. But after she left Egypt and came to Babylon once again, she actually became an unbridled whore, and founded the pagan Temple priestess/prostitute system, still prevalent in India till recently.

In Babylon she committed fornication with the kings of the various family groups settled nearby. They had not moved too far away from Babylon yet. In return, these kings furthered her Satan inspired Babylonian Mystery system among their tribes. The Mystery system had been formed as a counterfeit of the true religion by a fusion of the teachings of the Eternal God with her own Satan-inspired system. She as the head of this counterfeit system gave herself sexually to these kings and other civil rulers of the earth of her time. Thus Satan used Semiramis to foist his counterfeit system onto the tribal groups of her day, which grew into great nations. As the nations migrated outward from Babylon, the central point, they carried the counterfeit religion of Semiramis with them to all areas of the earth.

**Assyrian Conquests**

Not only did innovations in pagan religion increase and flourish under Satan’s guidance through Semiramis, the religion began to be enforced on other people. The main instrument to accomplish this after Nimrod’s death was Asshur, the son of Shem, and his descendants. After Nimrod’s death, the Babylonians who were mainly Japhethites mixed with other peoples and the Chaldeans who were descendants of the white Arphaxad were active in Babylon whereas the Assyrians [whose modern day descendants are the Germans] became active in consolidating power north of them in the cities they had built.

Much of the world population was still living around the Middle East, north Africa and coasts of the Mediterranean and had not moved too far away. Asshur, the ancestor of the Assyrians then under the generalship of his son Ninus II began conquests of the nations around to impose tribute on them. They had also begun building a fortified city, Nineveh, with very high and thick walls to protect themselves. The conquests took 17 years enabling the Assyrians to put many peoples under tribute.

The Assyrians were extremely brutal in their conquests. Ninus II had some rulers murdered with all their children so as to leave no heir. Here is what Diodorus of Sicily the ancient historian writes in his “*Historical Library*” Book II, chapter 1, pp 100 about Ninus II:

“Ninus therefore, the Assyrian king, with the prince of Arabia, his assistant, with a numerous army invaded the Babylonians then next bordering upon him: for the Babylon that is now [that is, in the time of Diodorus] was not built at that time; but the province of Babylon had in it then many other considerable cities, whose inhabitants he easily subdued (being rude and unexpert in matters of war), and imposed upon them a yearly tribute; but carried away the king with all his children prisoners, and soon after put them to death…

“Being thus strengthened, he invaded Media [i.e. the Medes, the descendants of Japheth], whose king Pharnus coming out against him with a mighty army was utterly routed, and lost most of his men, and was taken prisoner with his wife and seven children, and afterwards crucified.”

After 17 years of conquests when the Assyrians had become masters of that part of the world, they lived in their well-fortified cities with Nineveh their capital and tribute was brought to them on a yearly basis by all of their subject nations. The only way people could get away from the oppression of the Assyrians was to move away from them.

And they did move away, led by God in their migrations to the places He had allotted them in His colonization plan given to Noah. Josephus records in *Antiquities* I, IV.1, “After this they were dispersed abroad, on account of their languages, and went by colonies everywhere, and each colony took possession of that land which they light upon, and unto which GOD LED THEM.”

But the brutal treatment of other rulers by the Assyrians was not forgotten. They planned and plotted against the life of Ninus II. As mentioned earlier, Ninus II had a son named Horus with Semiramis. The year Ninus II finished his conquests, Semiramis left Egypt permanently and came and settled in Babylon. She continued to develop and spread her Babylonian Mystery religion from there.

Ninus II could not be brought to justice by conquest because of the well-fortified city Nineveh he lived in. So, the kings around hatched a plot with Semiramis. Remember Semiramis herself was a Japhethite, and most of the kings brutally treated by Ninus II were Japhethites. Semiramis now renewed her relationship with Ninus II and could easily move in and out of Nineveh. Ninus II again became very fond of her and probably married her this time.

Then Semiramis probably played a prank on Ninus II and asked him to give her royal authority for 5 days. She held a sumptuous banquet for the army commanders and the nobility so that all her subjects could observe that she ruled. These commanders and the nobility included many from among the provinces that Ninus II had conquered and were now allied with the Assyrians. She then secretly committed Ninus II to jail. Then she carried out Ninus II’s plans and invaded Armenia in which she was successful. She then had Ninus II assassinated and ruled in his place. Thus, though Ninus II could not be conquered because of his highly fortified capital city, he was brought down by intrigue.

This brought Horus, the illegitimate son of Ninus II and Semiramis back from Europe and a three-way struggle ensued between him, his mother and the king of Armenia for the throne of Assyria. After many years Semiramis fled to Armenia and was later slain in a battle with her son Horus.

**Assyrians and Abraham**

Even after the death of Semiramis, the Babylonian Mystery religion she had developed had taken deep hold over the people. As mentioned earlier, the pure white descendants of Arphaxad the son of Shem had been lured through financial incentives to become priests of the pagan religion. They settled among the ancestors of the Indian Cushites, or Kassites or Kshatriyas, where they are known as the Brahmins today, and among the Egyptians, Babylonians and in Italy. They propagated the pagan religion of Semiramis as enforced by the Assyrians, or through cunning craftiness in Italy and Europe where enforcement was not possible. In Italy where Noah had settled, these priests convinced the people after his death that they were honoring Noah, but cunningly taught the Babylonian Mystery religion, telling the people that Noah himself had preached that way.

Besides the priests who had dispersed among different peoples, there were other descendants of Arphaxad living in Mesopotamia. The Assyrians began to bring them into subjection. Because of the treacherous ways of the Assyrians, all these peoples were forced into living the way of lying, deceit, trickery and intrigue. They were forced to abandon the ways of truth and began to serve other gods.

Joshua 24:2 records: “And Joshua said unto all the people, Thus says the Lord God of Israel, Your fathers dwelt on the other side of the flood in old time, even Terah, the father of Abraham, and the father of Nachor: and they served other gods.”

This shows that Abraham’s father served other gods and idols and not the true God. Later we have the example of Jacob learning the ways of trickery from his mother Rebecca who came from that area and tricked his brother Esau and his father Isaac out of Esau’s birthright and blessing. We learn of the trickery of Laban the brother of Rebecca in his dealings with his nephew Jacob. We see the competitive dealings between the two wives of Jacob, the sisters Leah and Rachel. It was the treacherous influence of the Assyrians that had turned away these descendants of Arphaxad from the pure ways of God. They were the only ones at that time who had retained the knowledge of the true God. But through financial incentives to become priests of the pagan religion and from pressure from the Assyrians, all descendants of Arphaxad had also turned away from the true God.

Thus, after the Flood, a great struggle was waged between the pagans and those loyal to Noah and Shem to impose their religion over all of humanity. Paganism won out and all of humanity was corrupted and began to follow pagan worship practices. The Assyrians began to impose the pagan religion by force on the descendants of Shem. In about 400 years after the Flood, all of humanity once again turned away from worship of the true God.

This is the world into which the 3 sons of Terah, Haran, Abraham and Nahor were born. Terah and Nahor had turned away from the true God to serve other gods. By this time Noah had passed away, though Shem was still alive. There can be no doubt that Haran and Abraham went and visited Shem in the Danubian Valley where he lived in his old age, and learnt about the true God from him. In the early years of Abraham, they had respite from Assyrian oppression because Horus and his mother Semiramis were engaged in a tussle to gain or maintain control of the Assyrian Empire. But after gaining control of the Empire, Horus began imposing the pagan religion on all peoples. Haran and Abraham were bound to come into conflict with Horus and his governors and lesser Assyrian rulers. Jewish and Arab traditions tell us that Horus persecuted Abraham.

The Bible records that Haran and Abraham lived in Ur of the Chaldees. This was also the place where the Chaldean priests, the descendants of Arphaxad lived. The Chaldean priests had knowledge of the eclipses of the sun and moon and had learnt astronomy from Noah. So they could predict the movement of the celestial bodies. To gain hold over the people they falsely taught that they could communicate with the Sun and Moon gods who would tell them about their movements. But Abraham countered their teaching, having possibly learnt astronomy directly from Shem. He began to argue and teach that the sun and moon could not control their own motions but were subject to the laws of the supreme God. Their movements could be predicted. The sun and moon were not gods, but there is a Supreme God who governed their motions. He proved that the creation was proof of the existence of the true Supreme God. This brought Abraham into conflict with the Chaldean priesthood as described by Josephus the ancient historian. The Chaldean priesthood envisioned their lofty status in society slipping away. Josephus records, “For which doctrines, when the Chaldeans and other people of Mesopotamia raised a tumult against him [Abraham], he thought fit to leave that country…” (*Antiquities* I, VII, 1).

At this time, probably Haran and Abraham refused to pay tribute to the Assyrians. One of their lesser rulers Count Sattan came against them to enforce tribute. In this battle Haran the older brother of Abraham died. Abraham had to flee for his life to the Danube Valley with his wife Sarah. But he had to leave his Assyrian wife Susanna and their son Achim behind as the Assyrians would not harm one of their own.

After a few years when Count Sattan died, Abraham decided to return to his former home in Ur of the Chaldees to be with his wife Susanna and their son Achim. But God changed Abraham’s plans from then onwards. God appeared to him for the first time, called him and gave him a command and a new plan for his life. This is recorded in Genesis 12:1-5 (NKJV):

“1 Now the Lord had said to Abram: "Get out of your country, from your family and from your father's house, to a land that I will show you. 2 I will make you a great nation; I will bless you and make your name great; and you shall be a blessing. 3 I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse him who curses you; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." 4 So Abram departed as the Lord had spoken to him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was seventy-five years old when he departed from Haran. 5 Then Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot his brother's son, and all their possessions that they had gathered, and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they departed to go to the land of Canaan. So, they came to the land of Canaan.”

For about 2,000 years since the creation of Adam and Eve, God worked with all of humanity in general. But twice all of humanity had turned its back on Him: once before the Flood and now in about 400 years after the Flood. All except Abraham, Lot, Abraham’s wife Sarah and Shem, who was still alive, had turned away to worship other gods. God then decided to no longer work with all of humanity. He decided to create a model nation as mentioned in His promise to Abraham, with which He would work, bless that nation for obedience to His laws for the entire world to see as an example and learn from. Just as before the Flood God found Noah who was completely loyal to His way of life and worked with him to save humanity through the Flood, He now chose to work with one man, Abraham, who remained loyal to Him after the Flood when the rest of humanity had succumbed to paganism. The next set of great prophecies and promises of God relate to Abraham and his descendants.

These prophecies were not after thoughts. All this was thought out and planned even before the foundation of the world. In Deuteronomy 32:8 Moses states: “8 When the Most High divided their inheritance to the nations, when He separated the sons of Adam, He set the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the children of Israel.” This states that when God gave inheritance to the sons of Adam, He did it according to the number of children that would be born in the future to Israel after the Flood. This means the inheritance of the nations was pre-planned even at the time of Adam and Eve. So, when Abraham was asked to go to the land of Canaan, he was asked by God to go to his inheritance which the descendants of Canaan had usurped in the rebellion against God’s colonization plan.

Abraham was completely obedient to God and did not question why He asked him to go to Canaan. He simply obeyed God’s instructions and departed.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 6

**PROOF # 3(a) - GOD’S PROMISES TO ABRAHAM**

God appeared to Abraham for the first time and gave him a command and a new plan for his life. This is recorded in Genesis 12:1-5 (NKJV):

“1 Now the Lord had said to Abram: "Get out of your country, from your family and from your father's house, to a land that I will show you. 2 I will make you a great nation; I will bless you and make your name great; and you shall be a blessing. 3 I will bless those who bless you, and I will curse him who curses you; and in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." 4 So Abram departed as the Lord had spoken to him, and Lot went with him. And Abram was seventy-five years old when he departed from Haran. 5 Then Abram took Sarai his wife and Lot his brother's son, and all their possessions that they had gathered, and the people whom they had acquired in Haran, and they departed to go to the land of Canaan. So, they came to the land of Canaan.”

It is to be noted in these promises that all peoples on earth shall be blessed materially and spiritually through Abraham’s descendants.

Abraham was completely obedient to God and did not question why God asked him to go to Canaan. He did not argue with God to bless him in the land where he was rather than being asked to go to a strange land. He simply obeyed God’s instructions and departed.

God later began to add more details to His promises. Genesis 13:16 adds (NIV): “16 I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, so that if anyone could count the dust, then your offspring could be counted.” This means descendants of Abraham will increase greatly in population.

God then further expanded the scope of His promises to Abraham in Genesis 17:1-7 (NKJV): “1 When Abram was ninety-nine years old, the Lord appeared to him and said, "I am God Almighty; walk before me and be blameless. 2 I will confirm my covenant between me and you and will greatly increase your numbers." 3 Abram fell facedown, and God said to him, 4 "As for me, this is my covenant with you: You will be the father of many nations. 5 No longer will you be called Abram; your name will be Abraham, for I have made you a father of many nations. 6 I will make you very fruitful; I will make nations of you, and kings will come from you. 7 I will establish my covenant as an everlasting covenant between me and you and your descendants after you for the generations to come, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you. Also I give to you and your descendants after you the land in which you are a stranger, all the land of Canaan, as an everlasting possession; and I will be their God.”

Now the promises include instead of one nation, many nations being formed from the descendants of Abraham, and he becoming an ancestor of kings. Also, God promised him all the land of Canaan in which he was a stranger.

Later when Abraham was willing to offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice, God’s promises to him became unconditional. The account is stated in Genesis 22:11-12, 15 -18 (NKJV):

“11 But the Angel of the Lord called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham, Abraham!" So he said, "Here I am." 12 And He said, "Do not lay your hand on the lad, or do anything to him; for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me…15 Then the Angel of the Lord called to Abraham a second time out of heaven, 16 and said: "By Myself I have sworn, says the Lord, because you have done this thing, and have not withheld your son, your only son-- 17 blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply your descendants as the stars of the heaven and as the sand which is on the seashore; and your descendants shall possess the gate of their enemies. 18 In your seed all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice."

This time the promise of Abraham’s descendants possessing the gates, meaning narrow land and sea passages of access to enemies’ lands and strategic islands around the world is added.

**Promises to Abraham Passed on to Isaac and Jacob**

God then reconfirmed His covenant or unconditionally binding agreement [meaning Abraham had to do nothing more, but God was binding Himself to do His part and perform His promises to Abraham] with Abraham’s son Isaac and his descendants in Genesis 26:1-5. Then in Genesis 27:26-29, 28:1-4, 10-14, 25:9-12, the covenant and the promises were reconfirmed with Abraham’s grandson Jacob.

In confirmation of God’s promises to Jacob, many interesting details of the promises are revealed. First of all, Jacob received the birthright, which naturally belongs to the firstborn. Esau the firstborn sold the birthright to his younger brother Jacob for bread and stew of lentils.

The *International Standard Bible Encyclopedia* explains that the birthright was "the right belonging naturally to the firstborn son...Such a person ultimately became the head of the family, the line being continued through him. As firstborn he inherited a double portion of the paternal estate...The firstborn was responsible for...exercising authority over the household as a whole" (1979, Vol. 1, "*Birthright*," pp. 515-516).

Isaac pronounced the following blessing on his son Jacob in Genesis 27:28-29 (NKJV): “28 Therefore may God give you of the dew of heaven, of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. 29 Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, and let your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be everyone who curses you, and blessed be those who bless you!"

Isaac also let Jacob know that the promises of Abraham were being passed on to him in Genesis 28:3-4 (NRSV): “3 May God Almighty bless you and make you fruitful and numerous, that you may become a company of peoples. 4 May he give to you the blessing of Abraham, to you and to your offspring with you, so that you may take possession of the land where you now live as an alien—land that God gave to Abraham." Here Jacob is promised that his descendants will become a company of peoples, meaning many nations.

God then revealed through Jacob what the birthright and the blessing entailed in Genesis 28:14 (NKJV): “Also your descendants shall be as the dust of the earth; you shall spread abroad to the west and the east, to the north and the south; and in you and in your seed all the families of the earth shall be blessed.”

God promised that peoples and nations would serve the descendants of Jacob and bow down to them, meaning they will be the foremost nations on earth. They would spread around the world in all directions, north, south, east and west, from the Middle East.  They would multiply greatly in numbers, as the dust of the earth. These are not idle words. When we consider what God has in store for humanity for eternity in the universe, descendants of Jacob will literally multiply in numbers as the dust of the earth and the stars in heaven.

**Jacob Passes on God’s Promises to his Twelve Sons**

Before Jacob’s twelve sons, God had passed on His promises to Abraham to one son, preferring him over the other son. Abraham’s promises were passed on to Isaac instead of Ishmael. Then Isaac passed on Abraham’s promises to his son Jacob instead of his older son Esau. But then God began to pass on Abraham’s promises collectively to all the twelve sons of Jacob. Among the twelve sons of Jacob, God chose out two sons for special national blessings.

In Genesis 35:11-12 (NKJV) God promises Jacob: “Also God said to him: "I am God Almighty. Be fruitful and multiply; a nation and a company of nations shall proceed from you, and kings shall come from your body. 12 The land which I gave Abraham and Isaac I give to you; and to your descendants after you I give this land." Here God promises Jacob that a great nation and a company or commonwealth of nations would proceed from him.

That part of God’s promise Jacob then passed on to his two grandsons, Manasseh and Ephraim, the sons of Joseph in Genesis 48:14-19 (NKJV): “14 Then Israel [Jacob’s other name] stretched out his right hand and laid it on Ephraim's head, who was the younger, and his left hand on Manasseh's head, guiding his hands knowingly, for Manasseh was the firstborn. 15 And he blessed Joseph, and said: "God, before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, The God who has fed me all my life long to this day, 16 The Angel who has redeemed me from all evil, Bless the lads; Let my name be named upon them, And the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; And let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth." 17 Now when Joseph saw that his father laid his right hand on the head of Ephraim, it displeased him; so he took hold of his father's hand to remove it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. 18 And Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, for this one is the firstborn; put your right hand on his head." 19 But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He also shall become a people, and he also shall be great; but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his descendants shall become a multitude of nations."

So, God’s promise to Jacob that a great nation and a commonwealth of nations would proceed from him is conferred by him on his son Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh. This way, the birthright that conferred a double portion of the paternal estate was given to Joseph. However, not all dimensions of the promises to Abraham would go to Joseph. Judah received a very important promise of great physical and spiritual dimension.

Through Jacob God prophesied in Genesis 49:10 “the scepter [ruler’s staff] shall not depart from Judah.” That prophecy pointed to the dynasty of Israel’s future king David, a descendent of Judah, and also to Jesus, a descendent of Judah and king David as the Messiah, and ruler of the earth as King of Kings.

1 Chronicles 5:2 clarifies these two promises: “…Judah prevailed above his brethren, and of him came the chief ruler; but the birthright was Joseph's.” Thus, the birthright promise of great material blessings and to become a great nation and a company or Commonwealth of Nations went to the descendants of Joseph, but the promise of rulership went to the descendants of Judah.

**Details of Promises to Joseph and Judah**

When Jacob was close to death, he called his twelve sons together and prophesied what would happen to descendants of each of them in the last days, meaning our time. These blessings provide more details on the birthright promise to Joseph.

Genesis 49:1 states: “1 And Jacob called his sons and said, "Gather together, that I may tell you what shall befall you in the last days.” Then Genesis 49:22-26 (New Century Version) states: “22 "Joseph is like a grapevine that produces much fruit, a healthy vine watered by a spring, whose branches grow over the wall. 23 Archers attack him violently and shoot at him angrily, 24 but he aims his bow well. His arms are made strong, and his strength from the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel. 25 Your father's God helps you. God Almighty blesses you. He blesses you with rain from above, with water from springs below, with many babies born to your wives, and many young ones born to your animals. 26 The blessings of your father are greater than the blessings of the oldest mountains, greater than the good things of the long-lasting hills. May these blessings rest on the head of Joseph, on the forehead of the one who was separated from his brothers!”

These prophetic blessings pronounced on Joseph's descendants "in the last days" mean that they will live in a very fertile, well-watered highly fruitful land. They will be a people “whose branches run over the wall” means they will expand their territory by being a colonizing people. At times they will be attacked by their enemies, but they will remain strong and victorious through God’s miraculous intervention and help.

Their population will continue to grow steadily, enjoying blessings of great herds of livestock, bumper crops due to climate favorable for agriculture, and extensive mineral resources to support a robust economy. They will receive these blessings "in the last days," meaning in our time.

God’s promise of the scepter [or kingship] to Judah would be fulfilled through the descendants of King David. After David planned to build a temple for God, He made a covenant with David which provides details of the promise of that kingship as stated in 2 Samuel 7:12-16 (NKJV): “When your days are fulfilled and you rest with your fathers, I will set up your seed after you, who will come from your body, and I will establish his kingdom. He shall build a house for My name [which was fulfilled by David’s son King Solomon], and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. I will be his Father, and he shall be My son. If he commits iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men and with the blows of the sons of men. But My mercy shall not depart from him, as I took it from Saul, whom I removed from before you. And your house and your kingdom shall be established forever before you. Your throne shall be established forever." Here God promised David that his dynasty would last forever.

**Summary of God’s Promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob**

God’s promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and King David can now be listed as follows:

1)  God promised incredible material blessings of resources of the earth and riches to all of Jacob’s descendants, but primarily to Joseph’s sons Ephraim from whom would come the company or commonwealth of nations and to Manasseh from whom would come the single great nation. These blessing would be theirs in the last days, or our time.

2)  Descendants of Jacob would possess the gates of their enemies.

3)  All nations would be blessed materially and spiritually through the descendants of Jacob.

4)  The chief ruler would come from Judah through king David, with an everlasting dynasty.

**Fulfillment of the Promises**

All these promises of God to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were major prophecies. To see how all these incredible promises have been fulfilled, we must first identify who the modern descendants of Jacob are. Fortunately, various Church of God organizations have published excellent books and booklets on the subject. For comprehensive proof that white Americans are mainly the modern descendants of Manasseh the son of Joseph, the son of Jacob or Israel, and the British are the modern descendants of Manasseh’s brother Ephraim the reader may refer to the following five booklets:

1. *The United States and Britain in Prophecy*; by Herbert W. Armstrong, available from the Philadelphia Church of God at www.pcog.org.

2. *The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy*; published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.

3. *The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future*, eBook published by the United Church of God, available at its web site www.ucg.org under booklets.

4. *America and Britain in Prophecy*, by David C. Pack; published by the Restored Church of God, available at www.rcg.org.

5. *The United States and Great Britain in Prophecy*; published by the Living Church of God, available at www.lcg.org.

For detailed proof of where the other tribes of Israel are settled, the best source is “*America and Britain in Prophecy*” by David Pack. From his book, here is where the modern descendants of the other tribes of Israel can mainly be found:

Reuben – France

Simeon and Levi – Prophesied to be dispersed among all the tribes of Israel. Largest portion of Levi or the priestly tribe lives among the Jews.

Judah – The Jews worldwide, with a branch in Ireland.

Zebulun – Holland

Issachar – Finland

Dan – Primarily Ireland and Denmark

Gad – Switzerland

Asher – Belgium

Naphtali – Sweden

Benjamin – Norway, Iceland and among the Jews

Here is how God’s promises to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob have been fulfilled in the American, British and Jewish people.

1)  God promised incredible material blessings of resources of the earth and riches. This promise has been fulfilled in the descendants of Jacob in our time which are the people of the USA, British Commonwealth Nations, France, Switzerland, Ireland, Iceland, Scandinavia, the Benelux countries and the Jews.

2)  The nations of the earth would be blessed through them both materially and spiritually. The world has indeed been materially blessed through them by trading with them, and the British have been the engine of the world’s economy in the 19th and the Americans in the 20th century. The French too made significant contributions.

The world has also been spiritually blessed through them because the Savior Jesus Christ was a descendant of Judah, the son of Jacob. In addition, the knowledge of the true God has been preserved through them and propagated by the British and the Americans translating the Bible in virtually every language on earth and making it available to the world at very low cost.

3)  God also promised to bless those who bless them and seek their welfare, and curse those who curse them and seek their destruction. When the catastrophes that are soon to engulf the entire world are all over, we will see that this promise will have been fulfilled, and we will continue to see its fulfillment throughout God’s Kingdom into eternity.

4)  The patriarchs were promised that their descendants would multiply as the stars and the sand on the seashore in number. They already number more than 500 million today. But true fulfillment of this prophecy will go on throughout eternity.

5)  The promises included the land where the patriarchs roamed. The Jews today possess that land. But the true fulfillment of this prophecy will be in God’s Kingdom when descendants of Jacob will possess all the land between the Nile and the Euphrates rivers, as promised in Genesis 15:18. Eventually Israelites will fill much of the world with fruit, meaning with their population (Isaiah 27:6, “6 He [God] shall cause them that come of Jacob to take root: Israel shall blossom and bud, and fill the face of the world with fruit.”)

6)  In Genesis 17, when Abram was ninety-nine years old the Lord changed his name to Abraham and promised that he would become the father of many nations and of kings.  Today, the Israelite nations, the Jews, the Arabs, the Turks and many other nations we may not fully know are all descendants of Abraham, including obviously all their royalty.  This promise stands fulfilled.

7)  Abraham’s promises were passed on to his son Isaac, who then passed on the promises to his son Jacob and not his brother Esau. Many more prophetic details were further added to the promises. Isaac pronounced the following blessing on Jacob in Genesis 27:28-29: “28 Therefore may God give you of the dew of heaven, of the fatness of the earth, and plenty of grain and wine. 29 Let peoples serve you, and nations bow down to you. Be master over your brethren, and let your mother's sons bow down to you.”

Here instead of merely the land of Canaan, the promise of land is expanded to include the fatness of the earth, meaning lands that are richest in agriculture and mineral resources of the earth. Just look at the lands possessed by the British, American, French, Scandinavian and Benelux peoples to see how this promise has been dramatically fulfilled. And nations of the world have bowed down to and served the British and the French during their colonial empires.

8)  Then Isaac also let Jacob know in Genesis 28:3(NRSV) that his descendants will become a company of peoples, meaning many nations. Later Jacob passed on these promises to his 12 sons. The company of peoples promise has been fulfilled in the nations descended from the 12 tribes of Israel in Europe, and the Jews worldwide.

9)  When passing on these promises to his sons, Jacob singled out Joseph and his two sons Manasseh and Ephraim that they would become a great nation and a commonwealth of nations. Their descendants are the peoples of the USA and the British Commonwealth of nations. There has been no other single greatest nation on earth than America and the greatest Commonwealth of Nations than the British Commonwealth that have been closely allied any time before in the history of mankind.

Joseph was given the birthright of the firstborn which is a double portion of a father’s inheritance. Joseph’s two sons Manasseh and Ephraim actually became two tribes, each receiving their separate inheritance, thus obtaining a double portion of their father’s inheritance.

The birthright people were also promised they would be famous on earth and possess the richest resources of the earth. At the zenith of their power, the British and the American people constituted only 4% of the world’s population, but possessed about 70% of the world’s agricultural and mineral resources.

10)  Then when Abraham was willing to offer his son Isaac as a sacrifice, God’s promises to him became unconditional. In Genesis 22:11-12, 15 -18 the additional promise that Abraham’s descendants would possess the gates, meaning narrow land and sea passages of access to enemies’ lands was added. This incredible promise has been fulfilled in the British and American peoples who at the zenith of their power have possessed almost every major gate and strategic island on land and sea such as the Suez and Panama canals, the Rock of Gibraltar, the Khyber Pass, Hong Kong, the islands of Malta, Mauritius, Sri Lanka, Singapore the Falklands Islands and virtually every other gate around the world. Outcome of the Second World War hinged on the possession of these strategic gates. Most of the world’s commerce also passes through these gates. Even the Strait of Bosporus has been possessed by the Turks, the descendants of Esau, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham.

11)  In prophesying the future of Joseph’s descendants, Jacob stated in Genesis 49:22:

“22 Joseph is like a grapevine that produces much fruit, a healthy vine watered by a spring, whose branches grow over the wall.” A people "whose branches grow over the wall," or beyond their original borders, certainly means that they will be a colonizing people. There have never been such a colonizing people in the history of man as the British and American peoples. Thus, this prophecy stands fulfilled about 3,500 years after it was given.

12)  And finally, the promise of the scepter, meaning the chief ruler would come from Judah through King David, with an everlasting dynasty. Today, Queen Elizabeth II of Britain sits on that throne in unbroken dynasty from King David. In God’s kingdom, Jesus Christ, also a descendant of King David, will be the chief ruler over the earth, occupying that throne for eternity. What an incredible way for God to fulfill His promise and continue to have this prophecy come true throughout eternity?

From the founding of ancient Israel as a nation after the Exodus from Egypt around 1443 BCE till God began to bestow His blessings on Israel around 1800 A.D. there has been a time gap of more than 3,240 years. God gave many detailed and incredibly intricate prophecies to chart the future course of Israel and Judah after coming out of Egypt till these prophecies would be fulfilled in these ‘last days’. It makes for a story more thrilling than fiction and shows God’s Almighty power to fulfill all the prophecies over a period of more than 3,000 years.

A people can fulfill one or two prophecies by mere coincidence, but when a people fulfill hundreds of prophecies, then probabilistically we can be absolutely certain of the identity of those people as the one whom the prophecies were written about. If Britain and America fulfill hundreds of prophecies about Ephraim and Manasseh and Israel, then there can be no doubt in our minds that they are in fact the descendants of those patriarchs. We will look at these intricate prophecies next.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 7

**PROOF # 3(b) - PROPHECIES FULFILLED BY AMERICANS AND BRITONS**

From the time Israelites came out of Egypt till the ‘last days’ God gave incredibly intricate prophecies which the House of Israel would fulfill along the way for more than 3,000 years. When blessing Joseph’s sons, Jacob said in Genesis 48:16, “The Angel which redeemed me from all evil, bless the lads; and let my name be named on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac; and let them grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.” Jacob’s other name was Israel. So, most of the prophecies concerning Israel apply to the British and American peoples.

Here is a brief description of only some of the incredible prophecies fulfilled by the British and American peoples:

**1)  The Northern Kingdom (House of Israel) would be lost from world view**

After the reign of David’s son Solomon, the Kingdom of Israel was divided into two kingdoms. The northern Kingdom was known as the House of Israel and the southern Kingdom as the House of Judah. The descendants of the House of Judah are still known as the Jews today. But the identity of the descendants of the northern Kingdom was not known. They became known to history as the ‘lost ten tribes.’

The reason was that in Exodus 31:12-17 God instructed Moses that His Sabbaths were to be a sign between Him and Israel forever. A sign is something that identifies. The Sabbath is a perpetual reminder of God as the Creator and who His people are. As long as Israel kept the Sabbath, they maintained their identity. That is why the Jews have maintained their identity as “God’s people” throughout their history. But king Jeroboam of the northern Kingdom of Israel abandoned God’s Sabbaths. When they lost the identifying sign, they became lost to history as God’s people.

The other prophecies indicating that the House of Israel would lose its identity are:

Deuteronomy 32:26 where God warned Israelites through Moses: “…I would make the remembrance of them to cease from among men.”

Isaiah 8:17 says: “And I will wait upon the Lord, that hides His face from the House of Jacob [whose other name was Israel].”

**2)  House of Israel would lose its language, which was Hebrew**

This was prophesied in Isaiah 28:11 where God says He will speak to this people of Israel “11 …with…another tongue.” They now speak English, French, Dutch and the other north European languages.

**3)  House of Israel would lose its national name**

Isaiah 62:2 states: “2…You shall be called by a new name, which the mouth of the Lord will name.” This prophecy has already been fulfilled because the Israelites are known by different names today such as the British, Americans, French, Swiss, Dutch, Scandinavians, Belgians etc. The Jews are still known as Jews today.

**4)  Birthright blessings of national prosperity would be withheld 2,520 Years**

After Abraham was willing to sacrifice his son Isaac, the blessings on his descendants had become unconditional promises from God.

When Israel came out of Egypt, God through Moses told them that there were conditions to receiving His blessings. In Genesis 17:1-2 God told Abraham to walk before Him and become blameless and He would confirm His covenant with Him. When Abraham walked blameless, God did confirm His agreement with him. Similarly, for Israel to receive the promised blessings, the conditions were laid down in Leviticus 26, and also the consequences if they did not fulfill the conditions.

Leviticus 26:3-12 states: “3 'If you walk in My statutes and keep My commandments, and perform them, 4 then I will give you rain in its season, the land shall yield its produce, and the trees of the field shall yield their fruit. 5 Your threshing shall last till the time of vintage, and the vintage shall last till the time of sowing; you shall eat your bread to the full, and dwell in your land safely. 6 I will give peace in the land, and you shall lie down, and none will make you afraid; I will rid the land of evil beasts, and the sword will not go through your land. 7 You will chase your enemies, and they shall fall by the sword before you. 8 Five of you shall chase a hundred, and a hundred of you shall put ten thousand to flight; your enemies shall fall by the sword before you. 9 'For I will look on you favorably and make you fruitful, multiply you and confirm My covenant with you. 10 You shall eat the old harvest and clear out the old because of the new. 11 I will set My tabernacle among you, and My soul shall not abhor you. 12 I will walk among you and be your God, and you shall be My people.”

The conditions God laid down for Israel to be blessed were to keep God’s commandments and statutes, which is what Abraham was required to do to have the agreement with God confirmed. However, if Israel failed to fulfill the conditions to receive the blessings, curses would follow. The curses are stated in the rest of Leviticus 26. God continues from verse 14 onwards:

“14 'But if you do not obey Me, and do not observe all these commandments, 15 and if you despise My statutes, or if your soul abhors My judgments, so that you do not perform all My commandments, but break My covenant, 16 I also will do this to you: I will even appoint terror over you, wasting disease and fever which shall consume the eyes and cause sorrow of heart. And you shall sow your seed in vain, for your enemies shall eat it. 17 I will set My face against you, and you shall be defeated by your enemies. Those who hate you shall reign over you, and you shall flee when no one pursues you.”

The history of ancient Israel after it became established as a nation shows that she refused to keep God’s commandments. The nation did not receive God’s blessings but was cursed with terrorism and fighting with all the surrounding nations. Ancient Israelites even rejected God as their king and asked for a human king to be set up over them by Samuel the prophet. When their human king David obeyed God, Israel greatly prospered, and even in the early days of King Solomon when he obeyed God. But 1 Kings 11:1-4 says King Solomon loved many strange wives, marrying seven hundred and keeping 300 others as mistresses, and when he was old, they turned his heart towards other gods so that his heart was not perfect with the God of his fathers. Such disobedience kept Israel from continuing to receive God’s material blessings.

Things became progressively worse with Israel and Judah for refusing to keep God’s commandments. God sent prophets to warn the nations, but they refused to repent. Therefore, God could not confer the blessings He promised to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. However, the blessings to Abraham were promised unconditionally. God would then fulfill the prophecy given through Jacob to confer the unconditional blessings promised in the last days, meaning in our time. In doing so a further incredible prophecy had to be fulfilled that is stated in Leviticus 26:18, “18 'And after all this, if you do not obey Me, then I will punish you seven times more for your sins.”

In prophecy, a time refers to one year. So, seven times would be seven years. With 360 days in a prophetic year, seven years then would equal 2,520 days. But another principle of prophecy is a day being equivalent to one year in fulfillment of prophecy, as given in Numbers 13 and 14 when ancient Israelites were punished for forty years from entering the Promised Land, for the forty days they went and spied out the Promised Land, but refused to go in and possess it. Thus, seven years or 2,520 days of punishment of withholding the unconditional birthright blessings would in prophecy equal 2,520 years.

The ten-tribe northern kingdom of Israel did not repent throughout the period of their kingdom at the preaching of the prophets. God then carried out His prophecy of punishing them by withholding the birthright blessings for 2,520 years. The ten tribes were carried into captivity by the Assyrians in 722-721 B.C. Then 2,520 years after that would bring us to the year 1800-1801 A.D. When the seven times duration or 2,520 years of punishment of withholding the birthright ended in 1800-1801 A.D., God began to confer the unconditionally promised blessings on the descendants of Joseph, USA and British Commonwealth nations as well as the nations of northwestern Europe. That is when Britain began building its empire and America burst forth into national greatness.

**5)  Prophecies concerning David’s Throne**

The story of how God kept His promise to David that his dynasty will continue unbroken till the return of the Messiah is an incredibly fascinating one. These prophecies are explained in detail in Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong’s book “*United States and Britain in Prophecy*.” Here is a synopsis.

*i)  Descendants of David to rule over the House of Israel not Judah*

After the reign of David’s son Solomon over Israel, David’s descendants ruled over only the House of Judah (the Jews) and not the House of Israel till King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon carried Judah captive. But God prophesied in Jeremiah 33:14: "…thus says the Eternal: David shall never want a man to sit upon the throne of the House of Israel."

Notice, the descendants of David were prophesied to rule over the House of Israel and not the House of Judah, meaning the Jews. After Judah’s captivity, David’s descendants have never ruled as kings over the Jews, but have ruled over descendants of the House of Israel, in Britain.

*ii)  Prophet Jeremiah transplants David’s Throne*

Jeremiah’s commission from God is stated in Jeremiah 1:10 (NKJV), “10 See, I have this day set you over the nations and over the kingdoms, To ROOT OUT and to pull down, To destroy and to throw down, To BUILD AND TO PLANT."

Jeremiah prophesied about the end of Judah’s kingdom during the reign of the last kings of Judah. He was thus used to “root out” David’s throne from the House of Judah and to BUILD and to PLANT it in the Kingdom of the House of Israel. And that throne had to be planted within a generation according to God’s promise to David, or in Jeremiah’s lifetime.

After most of Judah was carried captive to Babylon, the remnant of Judah decided to go to Egypt for protection even though Jeremiah warned them not to do so. This is recorded in Jeremiah 43:5-7 “[And so Johanan] “took all the remnant of Judah…even men, and women, and children, and the king’s daughters…and Jeremiah the prophet, and Baruch the son of Neriah [Jeremiah’s scribe, or secretary]. So they came to the land of Egypt.”

Here we see that the only “remnant” left for Jeremiah’s mission of transplanting the throne of David was the king’s daughters. The fascinating story of how Jeremiah did this is told in Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong’s book “*United States and Britain in Prophecy*” and an electronic booklet titled “*The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future*” published by the United Church of God, available at its web site www.ucg.org under booklets.

Briefly the story is this. King David was a descendant of Judah’s son Pharez. But Pharez had a twin brother Zarah. When King Nebuchadnezzar had besieged Judah, a son of the king of the Zarah line of Judah who reigned in Ireland was visiting Jerusalem.  This prince was acquainted with Tea-Tephi, one of King Zedekiah’s daughters. Shortly after the fall of Jerusalem he married her. From Egypt, Jeremiah took this royal party to Ireland where the prince ascended the throne of Ireland over a part of the descendants of Israel. Thus, a daughter of the Pharez line of Judah was grafted into the Zarah line of Judah in Ireland. This is how Jeremiah fulfilled the second part of his commission about David’s throne: TO BUILD AND TO PLANT.

*iii)  Daughter to be used to transplant David’s Throne*

The fact that a daughter would be used to transplant David’s throne was also prophesied, in addition to many other detailed prophecies.

The truth of PLANTING and the REBUILDING of David’s throne was revealed in prophecy given in a “riddle and a parable” through the prophet Ezekiel.

First Ezekiel is told to speak a riddle, and then a parable. The riddle is found in Ezekiel 17 verses 3 to 10. Then beginning in verse 11, the Eternal explains its meaning. A great eagle came to Lebanon and took the highest branch of the cedar. This is explained to represent King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon who came to Jerusalem and took captive the king of Judah. The cropping off of the cedar’s young twigs and carrying them to a land of traffic is explained to picture the captivity of the king’s sons. “He took also of the seed of the land” means Nebuchadnezzar took also of the people, and the mighty of the land of Judah. He “set it as a willow tree. And it grew and became a spreading vine of low stature” means the Jews were given a covenant whereby, although they were ruled over by the Chaldeans, they might live in peace and grow.

The other “great eagle” is explained to represent Pharaoh of Egypt.

Thus, the riddle covers the first half of Jeremiah’s commission. Now notice what is revealed concerning the second part – the PLANTING of David’s throne! It comes in the parable, verses 22-24: “Thus says the Lord God; I will also take of the highest branch of the high cedar.” From God’s own explanation we have learned that the cedar tree represents the nation of Judah; its highest branch is Judah’s king. The riddle told us Nebuchadnezzar took the highest branch – the king. The parable now tells us God – not Nebuchadnezzar, but God – will take of the highest branch. Not the branch, but of the branch – of Zedekiah’s children. But Nebuchadnezzar took, and killed, all his sons.

God, through his prophet Jeremiah, is now going to take of this highest branch and “SET IT (verse 22). “I will crop off from the top of his young twigs A TENDER ONE, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent,” continues the Almighty. The twigs of this highest branch represent the children of King Zedekiah!  Certainly a young tender twig, then, represents a DAUGHTER!”…and will PLANT it.” Symbolic language could not be more plainer in saying that this young Jewish princess is to become the royal seed for PLANTING again of David’s throne?  Where? “…upon an high mountain and eminent,” says the Eternal! A “mountain” in symbol always represents a NATION.

“In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it,” answers the Eternal. David’s throne now is to be planted in Israel, after being thrown down from Judah. After this Hebrew princess is “planted” on the throne, now in Israel, lost from view – that throne is to BEAR FRUIT. She is to marry, have children, and her sons are to continue David’s dynasty!

Israel had already been independent in Ireland for four centuries. Israel in Ireland already had a kingly line onto which Zedekiah’s daughter was grafted. The Irish Israelites were an ancient colony and had not gone into Assyrian captivity.

*iv) Healing of ‘breach’ between the Pharez and Zarah*

The Bible mentions a mysterious ‘breach’ that occurred in the days of Judah (Genesis 38:28-30).

Judah was the father of twin sons. The firstborn was royal seed, for through him the scepter promise was to be carried down. It seems the midwife knew twins were about to be born. It is recorded that just before birth one of the twins ‘put out his hand: and the midwife took and bound upon his hand a scarlet thread, saying, ‘This came out first’.  But the child drew back his hand and the other was actually born first.”

The midwife exclaimed, “How have you broken forth? This breach be upon you: Therefore his name was called Pharez,” meaning “breach”. The other twin was named Zarah.

This strange occurrence was recorded in Bible history because this breach was to be healed between the sons or their descendants at some future time?

History shows the descendants of Zarah became wanderers, later migrating to Ireland.  But meanwhile, the Pharez-David-Zedekiah line possessed the scepter (rulership) – was HIGH – exalted. The Zarah line, feeling it rightfully should possess the scepter, and some day would, was low, abased – so far as royal power was concerned.

Now consider another prophecy given in Ezekiel 21:25-26 (KJV) “And you, profane wicked prince of Israel [Zedekiah], whose day is come, when iniquity shall have an end, thus says the Lord God; remove the diadem, and take off the crown [from Judah, as did happen, through the first half of Jeremiah’s commission]; this [the crown] shall not be the same: exalt him that is low, and abase him that is high.”

“Remove the diadem, and take off the crown,” means that the crown was removed from king Zedekiah of David’s dynasty. “This shall not be the same,” means that the diadem is not to cease, but a change is to take place. “Exalt him that is low, and abase him that is high,” means that King Zedekiah of Judah, who is high is to be abased. He is to lose that crown. House of Judah has been “high” while the House of Israel has been “low” – these many years without a king (Hosea 3:4). The Pharez line has been “high”; the Zarah line “low.”

This prophecy thus points to the breach between the Pharez and Zarah lines of the Jews (descendants of Judah) being healed with the Zarah line possessing the scepter over the House of Israel through marriage with the Pharez line.

*v)  David’s throne was prophesied to be overturned three times*

Ezekiel the prophet continues his prophecy of Ezekiel 21 in verse 27: “I will overturn, overturn, overturn it: and it shall be no more [overturned], until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him.” The diadem and the throne were to be overturned. Not once, but three times. It was to be overturned by abasing Zedekiah, the house of Judah and the Pharez line, and exalting the house of Israel, and one of the Zarah line! The first of the three overturns was performed as the first half of Jeremiah’s commission, by rooting out the throne of David from Jerusalem.

“And it shall be no more, until he come whose right it is; and I will give it him,” means that the throne would be no more overturned after the third overturn, and will be given to Jesus Christ, whose it is by right.

The prince and husband of the Jewish princess Tea-tephi ascended the throne of his father. The son of this king and the Jewish Princess continued on the throne of Ireland and this same dynasty continued unbroken through all the kings of Ireland. It was then overturned the second time and transplanted in Scotland, from where it was overturned the third time and moved to London, England, where this same dynasty continues today in the reign of Queen Elizabeth II. Thus, the three overturns of the throne prophesied in Ezekiel 21:25-27 have been fulfilled.

*vi)  Ephraim settled exactly where prophesied to settle*

If God kept His promise to David, the throne of David was to be planted ‘in the mountain of the height of Israel’ (Ezekiel 17:22-23: “I will crop off from the top of his young twigs a tender one, and will plant it upon an high mountain and eminent: 23 In the mountain of the height of Israel will I plant it”). We should, therefore, find it in the leading nation of the descendants of Ephraim, the birthright holders.

The precise location where Ephraim was to settle was also prophesied in the Bible.

The prophet Amos wrote in Amos 9:8-9 “Behold, the eyes of the Lord God are upon the sinful kingdom [house of Israel – Judah had not yet sinned], and I will destroy it [the kingdom, or government, not the people] from off the face of the earth…For, lo, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet shall not the least grain fall upon the earth.”

This prophecy says that the ten-tribe House of Israel (not Judah) was to be sifted among the nations, losing their identity. It was during this time that the children of the House of Israel were to “abide many days without a king” (Hosea 3:4). Although many of them were still scattered among various nations in the first century A.D., a portion of them had become established in a definite location of their own by Jeremiah’s time – 140 years after their original captivity.

In prophecy, the holders of the birthright are distinguished from Judah (the Jews) by various names: “Ephraim,” “Joseph,” “Jacob,” “Rachel” (Joseph’s mother), “Samaria” (their former capital), “Israel.”

According to Hosea 12:1: “Ephraim…follows after the east wind.” An “east wind” travels west. Ephraim must have gone west from ancient Assyria to an area that is due west of Jerusalem. When the Eternal swore to David that He would perpetuate his throne, He said: “I will set his hand [scepter] also in the sea” (Psalm 89:25). The throne is to be “set” or planted “in the sea.”

Through Jeremiah the Eternal said: “Backsliding Israel has justified herself more than treacherous Judah. Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say, Return you backsliding Israel, says the Lord” (Jeremiah 3:11-12). Thus, in these last days, messengers are to go “toward the NORTH (of Jerusalem where Jeremiah prophesied) in order to locate lost Israel and proclaim the warning message. So, the location, we now find, is toward the north, also west, and in the sea.

In Jeremiah 31:10, the message is to be declared “in the isles afar off” and is to be shouted in “the CHIEF OF THE NATIONS” (verse 7). Thus, finally, today, as in Jeremiah’s day, the house of Israel is in the isles, which are “in the sea,” the chief of the nations, northwest of Jerusalem, a coast-dwelling, and, therefore sea-dominant people. Certainly, there can be no mistaking that identity.

Take a map of Europe. Draw a line due NORTHWEST of Jerusalem across the continent of Europe, until you come to the sea, and then to the islands in the sea! This line takes you directly to the British Isles!  These prophecies show us where the prominent nation from the northern ten tribes can be located in our days.

For fascinating and much more thrilling than fiction details on Jeremiah’s “planting” and the present location of “lost” Israel and David’s throne, please read the United Church of God eBooklet titled “*The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future*” and Mr. Armstrong book "*The United States and Britain in Prophecy*".

**6)  Prophecies concerning wanderings of the House of Israel**

*i)  Tribe of Dan prophesied to leave clues about wanderings of the House of Israel*

The Israelites were prophesied to leave highway signs or waymarks along the trail they traveled from the land of ancient Israel after being deported by the Assyrians. Speaking about Ephraim, the ancestor of the British people, God through the prophet Jeremiah says in Jeremiah 31:20-21: “20 Is Ephraim My dear son? Is he a pleasant child? For though I spoke against him, I earnestly remember him still; therefore, My heart yearns for him; I will surely have mercy on him, says the Lord. 21 "Set up signposts, make landmarks; set your heart toward the highway, the way in which you went.”

In Genesis 49:17, the patriarch Jacob blessing his sons prophesied what would befall them. He said about his son Dan: “Dan shall be a serpent by the way.” Another translation of the original Hebrew can also be “Dan shall be a serpent’s trail.” It is a very significant fact that the tribe of Dan named every place they went after their father Dan.  It started way back when they had just settled in their land. Joshua 19:47 records:

“…the children of Dan went up to fight against Leshem, and took it…and called Leshem, Dan, after the name of Dan their father.”

Judges 18:11-12 records that the Danites took Kirjath-jearim and “called that place Mahaneh-dan unto this day.” Then the same company of 600 armed Danites captured Laish and “called the name of the city DAN, after the name of Dan their father (verse 29). This shows how the Danites left their “serpent’s trail” by the way as signposts by which they can be traced.

In Hebrew the vowels are not preserved. So, for Dan, if we leave the vowel a out, the Danites could be identified with names that could be spelled as “Dn”, meaning Den, Din, Don, or Dun in addition to Dan.

During the time of ancient Israel, the tribe of Dan occupied two different areas in the Holy Land. One part lived on the seacoast, and the other colony occupied the northernmost area. That is why Israel’s boundary is listed in the Bible as from Dan to Beersheba.

When the Assyrians defeated Israel, the seacoast Danites sailed away in their ships to Ireland. Irish history shows that the new settlers in Ireland were the “Tuatha de Dananns”, which translates to “Tribe of Dan.” They left their sign posts in names such as Dans-Laugh, Dan-Sower, Dun-dalk, Dun-drum, Don-egal Bay, Don-egal City, Dun-gloe, Din-gle and Dunsmor.

The northern colony of Danites, however, was captured by the Assyrians along with the other nine tribes. They settled and later traveled from the land just west of the Black Sea and northwest of the Caspian Sea. They left their “serpent’s trail” in names of rivers such as the Danube, Dneiper, Dniester and the Don in Europe. From there they migrated further west, finally settling in Denmark, which means “Dan’s mark.”  So, the tribe of Dan has left a “serpent’s trail” as prophesied by Dan’s father Jacob, in his blessing of Dan. This enables us to piece together the wanderings of the northern ten tribes of Israel after their captivity and deportation at the hands of the Assyrians.

*ii)  Part of Israel were to take their name from Isaac, the father of Israel*

God promised that Isaac, the son of Abraham and Sarah, would leave the track of his name on history. Genesis 21:12 states: "In Isaac your seed shall be called." Ancient written Hebrew didn't include vowels, so the written letters for Isaac were the SC or SK sound.

After the Assyrian captivity, those Israelites migrating north around the Black Sea to Europe were called Scythians. Initially, the eastern branch between Persia and China were called the Sakka or Saka. Later in Europe they became Sacesones (sons of Saka) and finally Saxons —settling in England and later America. The SK/SC sound is found yet today among descendant nations of some of the tribes: Scotland, Scotia, Scandinavia, etc.

**All Nations should Ponder these Promises**

The God of the Bible has demonstrated through these incredible prophecies and promises to one man and his descendants that He is the Almighty God who has total and complete control over everything in the universe because He has created it all.  And the very reason He gave these astounding material and physical promises and fulfilled them is that you may have evidence of His almighty power so that you may believe the promises of salvation He offers. In contrast, the gods of other religions have not backed up their promises of salvation by a demonstration of their power. They have not proved to us that they are the Almighty. They have not foretold of any great events they would do in the affairs of mankind and demonstrated their Almighty power by fulfilling them exactly as foretold.

But the God of the Bible has amply demonstrated that He is indeed the Almighty and has full and total control over the affairs of man. He has kept His promises to Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Judah and King David over thousands of years and is still keeping them today. He has performed all this unconditionally for Israel so that you may believe his promises of universal prosperity to all nations in His soon coming Kingdom on earth; and His equally incredible promise of eternal life to each and every human being on earth as His own literal son or daughter.

With fulfillment of these incredible promises and prophecies, compared to the God of the Bible, the gods of Islam, Hinduism and other world’s religions stand proved as charlatans, deceivers and counterfeiters who have inspired scriptures which contain philosophies and cunningly crafted lies as offers of salvation which are destructive to human well-being, designed to lead them away from the true God.

Now some may argue that gods of the various religions help their people. Hence it is natural for the God of the Bible to help Christian nations, or the British, American and Jewish peoples. In the past the Allah of Islam helped built the great Islamic empires of the past. Before that the gods of the Egyptians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, and Greeks helped them.

But, the gods of these peoples did not demonstrate they are the Almighty because they did not foretell their peoples’ rise to power. The God of the Bible on the other hand debunks this notion altogether because He foretold these nations’ rise to power centuries before it happened and brought it to pass exactly as He foretold. Thus, He demonstrated that He is the supreme God over all the earth.

**Rise of Arab and Ottoman Empires Prophesied**

Islamists should also know that the rise of the Arabs as a great nation, and then the Turks as a great empire have also been prophesied in the Bible.

The Arabs are the descendants of Ishmael the son of Abraham. God in His blessings on Ishmael stated in Genesis 17:20 (NKJV): “20 And as for Ishmael, I have heard you [Abraham]. Behold, I have blessed him, and will make him fruitful, and will multiply him exceedingly. He shall beget twelve princes, and I will make him a great nation.”

The promise to Ishmael is repeated through his mother Hagar in Genesis 21:17-17 (NKJV), “17 And God heard the voice of the lad [Ishmael]. Then the angel of God called to Hagar out of heaven, and said to her, "What ails you, Hagar? Fear not, for God has heard the voice of the lad where he is. 18 Arise, lift up the lad and hold him with your hand, for I will make him a great nation."

The descendants of Ishmael never became a great nation until the Islamic Empire founded by Mohammad.  After the successors of Mohammad, the Umayyad Caliphate ruled from 661 – 750 A.D which was followed by the Abbasid Caliphate which ruled from 750 A.D till 1258 A.D.

At the time of the Abbasids, Europe lay in the Dark Ages while the torch of civilization in the form of preserving literature and scientific learning in mathematics, chemistry, physics, medicine, geography and astronomy was kept burning by Islam. Thus, God fulfilled His promise to Ishmael to make him a great nation, one of the greatest on earth during the zenith of its power.

The Turks are descendants of Isaac’s son Esau or Edom, the brother of Jacob. They too became a great nation during the time of the Ottoman Empire. Their dominion was also prophesied in the Bible.

Genesis 27:39-41 states, “39 And Isaac his father answered and said unto him, Behold, your dwelling shall be [other translations add ‘away from’] the fatness of the earth, and of the dew of heaven from above; 40 And by your sword shall you live, and shall serve your brother [Jacob]; and it shall come to pass when you shall have the dominion that you shall break his yoke from off your neck.”

Thus, the descendants of Esau were also to have dominion or rule, but they were not to be the ‘great nation’ of their time. The Ottoman Empire has not been the greatest Empire of its time whereas the Arab empire of the descendants of Ishmael was. But the Ottoman Empire was a great Empire. They did have dominion as prophesied in God’s promise to Esau.

Though the Quran never prophesied the greatness of the Islamic Empires, the Bible did prophesy the rise of the Islamic Empires in the blessings to the original ancestors of the nations.

Next, we will examine prophecies about the rise of the world’s other great empires.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 8

**PROOF # 3(c) - GOD OF ALL HUMANITY**

Some may hold to the notion that different people have their own gods whom they worship who help them. But we simply cannot have different gods all working on the same earth to help their worshippers against worshippers of other gods to make them the chief people on earth. If this were true, the earth itself would be in chaos. However, the earth and the heavens continue in their finely tuned courses such that life is sustainable on earth. If anything was to change even slightly, the earth would become too hot or too cold making life impossible. So, the only conclusion we can reach is that there is only one supreme God who has created the entire universe and is in total and complete control of it.

To debunk the human idea that the gods of different peoples have control of different peoples, the God of the Bible plainly declares that He is in total control of the universe and in the affairs of man.

Speaking through Isaiah the prophet God challenges doubters to prove Him. He says in Isaiah 46:9-10 (NKJV): "For I am God, and there is no other; I am God, and there is none like Me, declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times things that are not yet done, saying, 'My counsel shall stand…"

God did tell the end from the very first prophecy in the Bible in the Garden of Eden in Genesis 3:15 when the serpent or Satan was cursed for deceiving humanity.  God said: “15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; it shall bruise your head, and you shalt bruise his heel.” Here God prophesied that He would send the Savior to defeat Satan and redeem mankind from death.

God Himself says in Isaiah 46 that prophecy is a proof of the true God. The gods of all other religions are mere idols, incapable of predicting the future and bringing it to pass.  The God of the Bible throws the gods of all other religions a challenge through Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 41:22-23 (Revised English Bible): "Let these idols come forward and foretell the future for us. Let them declare the meaning of these past events that we may reflect on it; let them predict the future to us that we may know what it holds. Declare what is yet to happen; then we shall know you are gods."

After God dealt with Israel and she proved unfaithful to Him for more than 850 years since the Exodus from Egypt, almost all of them ended up as captive slaves. But God then began to deal with Gentile nations through His prophets to show that He has control over all of them and all of humanity and sets up rulers or brings down whomever He wishes. This was made abundantly clear through Daniel the prophet to King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.

**Prophecies about Major Empires on Earth**

A remarkable prophecy recorded by Daniel is his interpretation of King Nebuchadnezzar's dream in chapter 2 of his book. In the second year of his reign the Babylonian king had a dream that troubled him greatly which none of his counselors, wise men, magicians or astrologers could explain. But Nebuchadnezzar was convinced that his dream was of great importance (Daniel 2:1-3).

The *Expositor's Bible Commentary*, Vol. 7, pp. 39, 46 says his dream gives us a "disclosure of God's plan for the ages till the final triumph of Christ" and "presents the foreordained succession of world powers that are to dominate the Near East till the final victory of the Messiah in the last days".

Daniel records the event as follows (NKJV):

“1 Now in the second year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, Nebuchadnezzar had dreams; and his spirit was so troubled that his sleep left him. 2 Then the king gave the command to call the magicians, the astrologers, the sorcerers, and the Chaldeans to tell the king his dreams. So they came and stood before the king. 3 And the king said to them, "I have had a dream, and my spirit is anxious to know the dream."

“4 Then the Chaldeans spoke to the king in Aramaic, "O king, live forever! Tell your servants the dream, and we will give the interpretation." 5 The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, "My decision is firm: if you do not make known the dream to me, and its interpretation, you shall be cut in pieces, and your houses shall be made an ash heap. 6 However, if you tell the dream and its interpretation, you shall receive from me gifts, rewards, and great honor. Therefore tell me the dream and its interpretation." 7 They answered again and said, "Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will give its interpretation." 8 The king answered and said, "I know for certain that you would gain time, because you see that my decision is firm: 9 if you do not make known the dream to me, there is only one decree for you! For you have agreed to speak lying and corrupt words before me till the time has changed. Therefore, tell me the dream, and I shall know that you can give me its interpretation." 10The Chaldeans answered the king, and said, "There is not a man on earth who can tell the king's matter; therefore, no king, lord, or ruler has ever asked such things of any magician, astrologer, or Chaldean. 11 It is a difficult thing that the king requests, and there is no other who can tell it to the king except the gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh."

“12 For this reason the king was angry and very furious, and gave a command to destroy all the wise men of Babylon. 13 So the decree went out, and they began killing the wise men; and they sought Daniel and his companions, to kill them. 14 Then with counsel and wisdom Daniel answered Arioch, the captain of the king's guard, who had gone out to kill the wise men of Babylon; 15 he answered and said to Arioch the king's captain, "Why is the decree from the king so urgent?" Then Arioch made the decision known to Daniel. 16 So Daniel went in and asked the king to give him time, that he might tell the king the interpretation. 17 Then Daniel went to his house, and made the decision known to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions,18 that they might seek mercies from the God of heaven concerning this secret, so that Daniel and his companions might not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. 19 Then the secret was revealed to Daniel in a night vision. So, Daniel blessed the God of heaven.”

After God had revealed the dream to Daniel, he was taken to the king by Arioch the King’s captain to explain the details of the dream: Daniel 2 continues in verse 27:

“27 Daniel answered in the presence of the king, and said…28…there is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will be in the latter days. Your dream, and the visions of your head upon your bed, were these…31 "You, O king, were watching; and behold, a great image! This great image, whose splendor was excellent, stood before you; and its form was awesome. 32 This image's head was of fine gold, its chest and arms of silver, its belly and thighs of bronze, 33 its legs of iron, its feet partly of iron and partly of clay. 34 You watched while a stone was cut out without hands, which struck the image on its feet of iron and clay, and broke them in pieces. 35 Then the iron, the clay, the bronze, the silver, and the gold were crushed together, and became like chaff from the summer threshing floors; the wind carried them away so that no trace of them was found. And the stone that struck the image became a great mountain and filled the whole earth. 36 "This is the dream.  Now we will tell the interpretation of it before the king.

“37 You, O king, are a king of kings. For the God of heaven has given you a kingdom, power, strength, and glory; 38 and wherever the children of men dwell, or the beasts of the field and the birds of the heaven, He has given them into your hand, and has made you ruler over them all--you are this head of gold. 39 But after you shall arise another kingdom inferior to yours; then another, a third kingdom of bronze, which shall rule over all the earth. 40 And the fourth kingdom shall be as strong as iron, inasmuch as iron breaks in pieces and shatters everything; and like iron that crushes, that kingdom will break in pieces and crush all the others.

“41 Whereas you saw the feet and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron, the kingdom shall be divided; yet the strength of the iron shall be in it, just as you saw the iron mixed with ceramic clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly of iron and partly of clay, so the kingdom shall be partly strong and partly fragile. 43 As you saw iron mixed with ceramic clay, they will mingle with the seed of men; but they will not adhere to one another, just as iron does not mix with clay. 44 And in the days of these kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed; and the kingdom shall not be left to other people; it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand forever. 45 Inasmuch as you saw that the stone was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it broke in pieces the iron, the bronze, the clay, the silver, and the gold--the great God has made known to the king what will come to pass after this. The dream is certain, and its interpretation is sure."

Daniel told Nebuchadnezzar that his Babylonian Empire was represented by the head of gold (verses 37-38). The silver, bronze, and iron and clay parts of the image represented three powerful empires that would follow Babylon (verses 39-40).

Nebuchadnezzar’s dream occurred around 600 B.C. Daniel’s interpretation of the dream provided an astonishing preview of the great empires that would dominate history of the civilized world from the time of Nebuchadnezzar right down to the return of Jesus Christ to earth in our time. This was history of the next more than 2,600 years foretold in advance.

Daniel’s interpretation of the dream was that the Babylonian empire was to be followed by another empire, represented by the chest and arms of silver. Two arms of silver would represent the two divisions of the empire. History shows that the Babylonian empire was succeeded by the empire of the Medes and Persians founded by Cyrus the Great when he conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. Its two divisions were the Median and Persian arms of the empire. It ruled over all the territory of the Babylonian empire and more, and held sway in the Near and Middle East for about two centuries.

The Medo-Persian Empire was succeeded by the Greco-Macedonian Empire of Alexander the Great and his successors. It swallowed up all the territory of the Medo-Persian Empire and conquered more. It was represented by the belly and thighs of bronze in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. It lasted for about 265 to 300 years, until it was conquered by the Roman Empire. The belly represented the empire when it was united under Alexander and the thighs represented its two dominant divisions later, the northern division based in Syria, Babylonia and territory up to India (the Seleucids), and the southern division based in Egypt (the Ptolemies).

The Roman Empire that succeeded the Greco-Macedonian Empire was tough and ruthless as iron is tough. It ruled all the territory of the Greco-Macedonian Empire in the Middle East, and is represented by the legs of iron, and feet partly of iron and partly of clay in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. The two legs of the empire represented its two divisions with their capitals at Rome (the western leg) and Constantinople (the eastern leg).

The Roman Empire was crushed in 476 A.D. But Daniel’s prophecy mentioned in verse 44 that “…in the days of these kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom which shall never be destroyed.” This part of the prophecy says that Jesus Christ will set up God’s kingdom in the days of the kings represented by the ten toes. This means that though the Roman Empire was crushed in 476 A.D., there would be later resurrections.

The details of these resurrections are provided in other prophecies revealed to Daniel.  In fact, the Roman Empire is also represented by the fourth beast in the prophecy in Daniel 7 (NKJV) which states:

“1 In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, Daniel had a dream and visions of his head while on his bed. Then he wrote down the dream, telling the main facts. 2 Daniel spoke, saying, "I saw in my vision by night, and behold, the four winds of heaven were stirring up the Great Sea. 3 And four great beasts came up from the sea, each different from the other. 4 The first was like a lion, and had eagle's wings. I watched till its wings were plucked off; and it was lifted up from the earth and made to stand on two feet like a man, and a man's heart was given to it.”

Students of prophecy have long understood from history the empires that these beasts represented. The lion represented the Babylonian empire, corresponding to the head of gold in Nebuchadnezzar’s image. The wings being plucked off and then lifted up from earth and made to stand on two feet like a man is talking about King Nebuchadnezzar’s ordeal mentioned in Daniel 4 when a beast’s heart was given to him and he ate grass like an ox for 7 years because he boasted that by his mighty power he had won the kingdom and made Babylon great.

Daniel continues: “5 And suddenly another beast, a second, like a bear. It was raised up on one side, and had three ribs in its mouth between its teeth. And they said thus to it: 'Arise, devour much flesh!'

The bear represented the Medo-Persian Empire, which in Nebuchadnezzar’s image was represented by the chest and arms of silver.

Daniel 7 continues: “6 After this I looked, and there was another, like a leopard, which had on its back four wings of a bird. The beast also had four heads, and dominion was given to it.”

The leopard represented the Greek Empire of Alexander and his successors, corresponding to the belly and thighs of bronze of Nebuchadnezzar’s image.

Then verse 7 continues: “7After this I saw in the night visions, and behold, a fourth beast, dreadful and terrible, exceedingly strong. It had huge iron teeth; it was devouring, breaking in pieces, and trampling the residue with its feet. It was different from all the beasts that were before it, and it had ten horns. 8 I was considering the horns, and there was another horn, a little one, coming up among them, before whom three of the first horns were plucked out by the roots. And there, in this horn, were eyes like the eyes of a man, and a mouth speaking pompous words. 9 "I watched till thrones were put in place, And the Ancient of Days was seated…11 "I watched then because of the sound of the pompous words which the horn was speaking; I watched till the beast was slain, and its body destroyed and given to the burning flame…13 "I was watching in the night visions, And behold, One like the Son of Man, Coming with the clouds of heaven! He came to the Ancient of Days, and they brought Him near before Him. 14 Then to Him was given dominion and glory and a kingdom that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and His kingdom the one which shall not be destroyed. 15 "I, Daniel, was grieved in my spirit within my body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

“16 I came near to one of those who stood by, and asked him the truth of all this. So he told me and made known to me the interpretation of these things: 17 'Those great beasts, which are four, are four kings which arise out of the earth. 18 But the saints of the Most High shall receive the kingdom, and possess the kingdom forever, even forever and ever.' 19 Then I wished to know the truth about the fourth beast, which was different from all the others, exceedingly dreadful, with its teeth of iron and its nails of bronze, which devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled the residue with its feet; 20 and the ten horns that were on its head, and the other horn which came up, before which three fell, namely, that horn which had eyes and a mouth which spoke pompous words, whose appearance was greater than his fellows. 21 I was watching; and the same horn was making war against the saints, and prevailing against them, 22 until the Ancient of Days came, and a judgment was made in favor of the saints of the Most High, and the time came for the saints to possess the kingdom.

“23 "Thus he said: 'The fourth beast shall be a fourth kingdom on earth, which shall be different from all other kingdoms, and shall devour the whole earth, trample it and break it in pieces. 24 The ten horns are ten kings who shall arise from this kingdom. And another shall rise after them; He shall be different from the first ones, and shall subdue three kings. 25 He shall speak pompous words against the Most High, shall persecute the saints of the Most High, and shall intend to change times and law. Then the saints shall be given into his hand for a time and times and half a time. 26 'But the court shall be seated, and they shall take away his dominion, to consume and destroy it forever. 27 Then the kingdom and dominion, and the greatness of the kingdoms under the whole heaven, shall be given to the people, the saints of the Most High. His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all dominions shall serve and obey Him.'28 "This is the end of the account…”

The ten horns of the fourth beast in this prophecy indicate that after the Roman Empire was destroyed in 476 A.D., there would be ten resurrections of the Empire right down to the return of Jesus Christ to earth. Then another little horn came up among the ten horns with a mouth speaking pompous words against the Most High, meaning God, before whom the first three horns were plucked up by the roots. Verse 25 says: 25 He shall speak pompous words against the Most High, Shall persecute the saints of the Most High, and shall intend to change times and law.”

A horn in prophecy represents a king or ruler, and one speaking against the Most High means it is a false religious power. There has been only one religious power in the territory of the Roman Empire whose head wears a crown, which has persecuted God’s true Church through the centuries, and has actually changed times and laws; and that is the head of the false Church based in Rome.

This false Church has persecuted God’s true Church through centuries, martyring hundreds of thousands. It has also changed times. It has given the world a different calendar from God’s calendar, the Gregorian calendar. It has changed the beginning of a day from sunset to the middle of the night, beginning of the year from spring to the dead of winter, the beginning of the week from Sunday to Monday. It has changed God’s laws, the Ten Commandments and holy days by doing away with the seventh day Sabbath, instead worshipping on Sunday, the day of sun worship of the pagans; deleting the second commandment that prohibits worshipping images or idols; doing away with God’s seven annual holy days and foisting pagan holidays such as Christmas and Easter dressed in Christian garb on Christianity. So history clearly points out who the prophesied little horn is!

Now notice how this little horn fulfilled Daniel’s prophecies.

The first three resurrections of the Roman Empire after 476 A.D. were those of the Vandals, the Heruli and the Ostrogoths. These three horns or kingdoms were uprooted at the behest of the pope (the little horn of Daniel 7:8) as prophesied in Daniel 7:8. The reason the pope encouraged rulers and generals to drive these kingdoms out of Rome was that they held beliefs different from those of the Roman Church. The word uprooted is also significant. These barbarian peoples were completely driven out of Rome. They were not allowed to take root in the Roman lands.

After the three successive kingdoms ended, the next seven resurrections would be called the Holy Roman Empire. The reason was that the pope of the Roman Church would crown the emperors of these kingdoms as holy Roman emperors and protectors of the False Church. In 554 A.D. Emperor Justinian began the first resurrection. This was followed by that of Charlemagne who was crowned Holy Roman Emperor in 800 A.D.

The 3rd resurrection was that of Otto the Great who was crowned in 962 A.D. The 4th resurrection was that of Charles V of the Hapsburg Dynasty, crowned Holy Roman Emperor in 1530 A.D. The 5th resurrection was that of Napoleon from 1804-1814 A.D., and the 6th resurrection occurred when Garibaldi united the little kingdoms in Italy by 1870 and then Mussolini signed a secret concordat with the pope and declared his rule as the Holy Roman Empire, including the African territories of Eritrea and Somaliland as parts of his kingdom. The Hitler-Mussolini Axis was part of the sixth resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.

The seventh and final resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire, which is also the 10th resurrection of the Roman Empire [the Vandals, the Heruli and the Ostrogoths being the first three], is yet in the near future and is represented by the tenth horn of Daniel’s fourth beast and feet and ten toes of Nebuchadnezzar’s image. This indicates an alliance of ten rulers. In the days of these kings Jesus Christ will return, smash this kingdom and set up God’s kingdom which shall never be destroyed, as indicated by the words in Nebuchadnezzar’s dream, and also in Daniel 7:13-14, 26-27.

Further prophecies in Daniel 8:1-21 provide more details about these empires and identify the Medo-Persian and Greek empires by name.

Thus, we see that God prophesied the succession of great empires ruling the Near and Middle East, and brought it to pass exactly as prophesied. The odds of any human being foreseeing these events on his own and predicting them correctly defy reason. Daniel said: “…There is a God in heaven who reveals secrets, and He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will be in the latter days” (Daniel 2:28).

We living today will soon be witnesses to the fulfillment of this prophecy when ten rulers will unite in Europe to set up the tenth resurrection of the Roman Empire, which is the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire. It calls itself the Holy Roman Empire because the great false Roman Church will be involved in its resurrection.

**New Testament Prophecies Already Fulfilled**

Just as many of the prophecies written by Daniel have already been fulfilled, the prophecies written by John the apostle in the Book of Revelation have already been fulfilled. The two prophetic books complement each other.

When Daniel wrote his prophetic book, all the empires prophesied were still to come in the future. But when John wrote the book of Revelation, the Babylonian, Medo-Persian and the Greco-Macedonian empires had passed from history. Jesus and the apostles were living in the Roman Empire, the fourth Empire of Daniel 7. So, the prophecies in Revelation 13 and Revelation 17 in the form of beasts refer entirely to the Roman Empire and its ten resurrections. (For detailed explanation, please refer to the booklet titled “*The Beast of Revelation: Myth, Metaphor or Soon-Coming Reality*?” by John H. Ogwyn, available free of charge from the Living Church of God at www.lcg.org).

The nature and history of the great false Church based in Rome was prophesied as the little horn of Daniel 7:8, but also as the other beast of Revelation 13:11-18 and the Great Whore of Revelation 17. The ten resurrections of the Roman Empire were prophesied as the 10 horns of the fourth beast of Daniel 7, but also as the 10 horns of the beast of Revelation 13. These ten horns were on the seventh head of the beast of Revelation 13. The last 7 of the 10 horns on the 7th head of the beast of Revelation 13 corresponded to the 7 heads of the beast of Revelation 17. These 7 heads of the beast of Revelation 17 were the seven resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire ridden by the great Whore which is identified as the great false church based in Rome. The ten horns on the seventh head of the beast of Revelation 17 also corresponded to the ten toes of Nebuchadnezzar’s image of Daniel 2.

Six resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire have already been fulfilled, and the seventh is soon to take place. The ten horns on the seventh head signify that it will be a combination of ten rulers in league with the false Church. Fulfillment of these prophecies in the Book of Revelation thus provides further proof that the New Testament like the Old Testament is backed by the power of Almighty God. Hence it is the true word of God.

**God Even names King Cyrus Century and a Half in Advance**

God through Isaiah the prophet prophesied about the coming of a Persian king named Cyrus century and a half in advance who would let the Jewish captives go free and rebuild Jerusalem.

Isaiah 44:28 (NKJV), “28 Who says of Cyrus, 'He is My shepherd, and he shall perform all My pleasure, saying to Jerusalem, "You shall be built," and to the temple, "your foundation shall be laid." '

Isaiah 45:1, 13, “1 Thus says the Lord to his anointed, to Cyrus, whose right hand I have held, to subdue nations before him; and I will loose the loins of kings, to open before him the two leaved gates; and the gates shall not be shut…13 I have raised him up in righteousness, and I will direct all his ways: he shall build my city, and he shall let go my captives, not for price nor reward, says the Lord of hosts.”

In this remarkable prophecy God named the ruler a century and a half in advance and foretold what he would do. The British Museum contains the cylinder of King Cyrus of Persia, dated to 538 B.C. which records a description of his conquest of Babylon and his policy of tolerance for the religions of his subject peoples. The Bible records Cyrus’ decree allowing the Jews taken captive by Nebuchadnezzar to return to their land and rebuild Jerusalem and the Temple. 2 Chronicles 36:22-23, “22 Now in the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, that the word of the Lord by the mouth of Jeremiah might be fulfilled, the Lord stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, so that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and also put it in writing, saying, 23 Thus says Cyrus king of Persia: All the kingdoms of the earth the Lord God of heaven has given me. And He has commanded me to build Him a [i]house at Jerusalem which is in Judah. Who is among you of all His people? May the Lord his God be with him, and let him go up!”

Through the fulfillment of this prophecy, God of the Bible again demonstrates His total control over the lives of kings, people and the affairs of mankind.

**God of the Bible is Sovereign over the Entire Earth**

In the astonishingly accurate fulfillment of these detailed prophecies, the God of the Bible demonstrates His Almighty power, and proves that the gods of all other religions are false gods. In fact they are no gods at all, but idols. He has declared ‘…from ancient times things that are not yet done, saying, 'My counsel shall stand…" as stated in Isaiah 46:10, and has brought it to pass.

The God of the Bible rules not only in Israel, but He is Sovereign over all the kingdoms of men and appoints over them whomever He wills. When King Nebuchadnezzar’s heart was lifted up with pride because of the greatness and might of the Babylonian kingdom he had built, he was abased by his mind being turned into a beast for 7 years. Daniel thus describes the lessons he learnt to his successor Belteshazzar in Daniel 5:18-21(NKJV):

“18 O king, the most high God gave Nebuchadnezzar your father a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honor: 19 And for the majesty that he gave him, all people, nations, and languages, trembled and feared before him: whom he would he slew; and whom he would he kept alive; and whom he would he set up; and whom he would he put down. 20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was deposed from his kingly throne, and they took his glory from him: 21 And he was driven from the sons of men; and his heart was made like the beasts, and his dwelling was with the wild asses: they fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven; till he knew that the most high God ruled in the kingdom of men, and that he appoints over it whomsoever he will.”

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 9

**PROOF # 3 (d) - GOD CONTROLS DAILY AFFAIRS OF HUMANS**

God of the Bible prophesied about great empires and has demonstrated His almighty power to bring them to pass. Some might argue that God could fulfill prophecies about great empires, but He cannot control the lives of kings and individuals. To convince such skeptics God gave remarkably detailed prophecies in Daniel 11 which have been fulfilled precisely. Let’s look at these prophecies verse by verse and see how God assured that they were brought to pass. The verses are quoted from the NKJV:

**Incredible Prophecies in Daniel 11**

Daniel 11, **Verse 1**: “Also in the first year of Darius the Mede, I, even I, stood up to confirm and strengthen him.”

The first year of Darius was 539 BC. The ‘I’ referred to here is God’s angel.

**Verse 2**: “And now I will tell you the truth: Behold, three more kings will arise in Persia and the fourth shall be far richer than them all; by his strength, through his riches, he shall stir up all against the realm of Greece.”

Daniel received this vision in the third year of Cyrus the Great (Daniel 10:1). God said that four more kings would reign after Cyrus. Actually, there were at least 12 more Persian kings after Cyrus, but the first four were the important ones.

The “three more kings” were Cambyses (530-522 BC), the elder son of Cyrus, who secretly killed his younger brother Smerdis after inheriting the throne, Pseudo-Smerdis (522 BC) an imposter who passed himself off as Cyrus’ younger son, and Darius I (522-486 BC). After the imposter was discovered, the Persian nobles rejected Pseudo-Smerdis in favor of Darius I.

The fourth king Xerxes (the husband of Esther) who was the strongest and richest of them all invaded Greece. He reigned from 486-465 BC.

**Verses 3-4**: “Then a mighty king shall arise, who shall rule with great dominion, and do according to his will. And when he has arisen, his kingdom shall be broken up and divided toward the four winds of heaven, but not among his posterity nor according to his dominion with which he ruled; for his kingdom shall be uprooted, even for others besides these.”

This verse introduces King Alexander the Great. Alexander’s father, King Philip of Macedonia planned a great invasion to conquer the Persian Empire with an army mainly of Greeks. But he died before the plans could be completed. His son Alexander took over his plans and invaded the Persian Empire. He defeated the Persian army at the Battle of Issus in 333 B.C. (Daniel 8:2, 5-6). Then he swept down into Egypt. Then in a final battle at Arbella (331 B.C.) he crushed the Persian Empire. From there Alexander marched on a conquest all the way to India, sweeping all rulers before him. Alexander certainly “ruled with great dominion and did according to his will” as prophesied.

Here is how Daniel 8:4-8 (NKJV) provide details about the rise of the Persian Empire represented by a ram, and its crushing by Alexander, represented by a he-goat:

“3 Then I lifted my eyes and saw, and there, standing beside the river, was a ram which had two horns, and the two horns were high; but one was higher than the other, and the higher one came up last. 4 I saw the ram pushing westward, northward, and southward, so that no animal could withstand him; nor was there any that could deliver from his hand, but he did according to his will and became great.

“5 And as I was considering, suddenly a male goat came from the west, across the surface of the whole earth, without touching the ground; and the goat had a notable horn between his eyes. 6 Then he came to the ram that had two horns, which I had seen standing beside the river, and ran at him in the fury of his power. 7 And I saw him confronting the ram; he was moved with rage against him, attacked the ram, and broke his two horns. There was no power in the ram to withstand him, but he cast him down to the ground and trampled him; and there was no one that could deliver the ram from his hand. 8 Therefore the male goat grew very great; but when he became strong, the large horn was broken, and in place of it four notable ones came up toward the four winds of heaven.”

Both Daniel 11 and Daniel 8 indicate that Alexander’s kingdom would be broken up and divided into 4 divisions, but not to his posterity. Now see how this verse was fulfilled.

*A Manual of Ancient History (Student Series)* by Rawlinson says: "Cut off unexpectedly in the vigor of early manhood [in his 33rd year, June, 323 B.C.], he [Alexander] left no inheritor, either of his power or of his projects" (p. 237). Alexander’s infant son was murdered in 310 and an illegitimate brother assassinated in 317. Thus, Alexander had no descendants or blood relatives to succeed him.

Then an attempt was made to hold the empire together jointly in the name of Alexander’s nephew and unborn son. But that attempt failed. Then Antigonus, one of Alexander’s generals, made a bid for power. But he was unable to consolidate his position. In the Battle of Ipsus in 301 BCE, the coalition of Seleucus, Lysimachus and Ptolemy defeated him and he died in that battle. That is the meaning of the phrase “for his kingdom shall be uprooted, even for others besides these.”

By 301 B.C. four divisions emerged out of the Kingdom, each ruled by one of Alexander’s generals, just as prophesied. These were:

1. Ptolemy (Soter), ruling Egypt, part of Syria and Judea.

2. Seleucus (Nicator), ruling Syria, Babylonia and territory east to India.

3. Lysimachus, ruling Asia Minor.

4. Cassander, ruling Greece and Macedonia.”

Cassander and Lysimachus were the two weaker of the four generals.

The other two, however, ruling in Syria and Egypt respectively expanded their rule and territory and engaged in two centuries of conflict and struggle in the Middle East. It is these two kingdoms, one north of Jerusalem (The Seleucid empire in Syria), the other south (the Ptolemies of Egypt) that Daniel 11 primarily focuses on in the next several verses.

**Verse 5**: “Also the king of the South shall become strong, as well as one of his princes; and he shall gain power over him and have dominion. His dominion shall be a great dominion.”

The king of the South mentioned here was Ptolemy I. The phrase “one of his princes” refers to Seleucus Nicator, who originally served as a general under Ptolemy. While Ptolemy was tied up in war after Alexander’s death, Seleucus gained control in the north, and founded the Seleucid dynasty. As verse 5 says, this dynasty actually wielded more power than the king of the south. Seleucus ended up with Alexander’s far-eastern territory, all the way to India. His western boundary included the region known as Syria today. He also ruled the areas known anciently as Assyria and Babylon.

From this point on in the prophecy, the angel focuses on Egypt under the Ptolemies, known as the ‘King of the South’ and Greater Syria under the Seleucids, known as the “King of the North.

**Verse 6**: “And at the end of some years they shall join forces, for the daughter of the king of the South shall go to the king of the North to make an agreement; but she shall not retain the power of her authority, and neither he nor his authority shall stand; but she shall be given up, with those who brought her, and with him who begot her, and with him who strengthened her in those times.”

Both kingdoms remained hostile to one another. In 285 BCE Ptolemy I died. Meanwhile Antiochus II (called Theos) came to the throne in Syria. In 260 he initiated a war with the King of the South. The war was terminated in 252 when the two powers attempted an agreement whereby the daughter (Bernice) of the King of the South, Ptolemy (II) Philadelphus, was to marry the King of the North. Antiochus II divorced his wife Laodice. (George Rawlinson, *A Manual of Ancient History*, pp. 251-252.) But neither Antiochus Theos nor Bernice could retain that power. After Ptolemy Philadelphus died in 247 BC, Antiochus II promptly gave up Bernice and retook Laodice as his wife. But still angry from being banished years earlier, Laodice stayed with Theos long enough to conceive and then had her husband poisoned, thus securing the throne for his and her son, Seleucus II. She then tracked down Bernice and had her assassinated as well, squelching any hope of the Ptolemies to have a descendent on the Seleucid throne in the north. Fulfillment of these detailed prophecies indicates that God can raise any human beings to fulfill any purpose He wishes.

**Verses 7-9**: “But from a branch of her roots [meaning from Bernice’s parents, or a sibling] one shall arise in his place, who shall come with an army, enter the fortress of the king of the North, and deal with them and prevail. And he shall also carry their gods captive to Egypt, with their princes and their precious articles of silver and gold; and he shall continue more years than the king of the North. Then the king of the North shall come to the kingdom of the king of the South, but shall return to his own land.”

Soon after Laodice killed his sister Bernice, Ptolemy III sought to avenge his sister’s death. Rawlinson says: "Ptolemy Euergetes [the III, eldest son of Philadelphus (p. 272) and therefore Bernice's brother, a branch of her roots] invaded Syria, B.C. 245, to avenge the murder of his sister, Bernice...In the war which followed, he carried everything before him" (Rawlinson, *ibid*., p. 252).

Ptolemy III attacked the king of the North [Seleucus II] and captured the capital city of Antioch. He carried back with him immense wealth and many idols and vessels that Persian Emperor Cambyses had taken from Egypt in 526 BC.

Ptolemy III continued to rule till his death in 221 BC, nearly six years after the death of Seleucus II in 226 BC, thus fulfilling the words “he shall continue more years than the king of the North”. Seleucus II had attempted an attack on Ptolemy III, but returned to Syria when his attempt failed, thus fulfilling the prophetic words “Then the king of the North shall come to the kingdom of the king of the South, but shall return to his own land.”

**Verses 10-12**: “However, his sons shall stir up strife, and assemble a multitude of great forces; and one shall certainly come and overwhelm and pass through; then he shall return to his fortress and stir up strife. And the king of the South shall be moved with rage, and go out and fight with him, with the king of the North, who shall muster a great multitude; but the multitude shall be given into the hand of his enemy. When he has taken away the multitude, his heart shall be lifted up; and he will cast down tens of thousands, but he will not prevail.”

After their father’s death, the sons of Seleucus II (Seleucus III and Antiochus III the Great) assembled great forces and attacked the king of the South to recover their Port and fortress Seleucia. Seleucus III reigned for only 3 years because he was poisoned.  But Antiochus III did “overwhelm and pass through,” recovering his fortress Seleucia and conquering Judea. However, he gained control of Judea only for a short time.

Antiochus III returned to his fortress, but his taking Judea stirred up strife. It enraged Ptolemy IV, the king of the South. He retaliated and defeated the much larger army of Antiochus III at the battle of Raphia. He killed tens of thousands of Syrian troops and retook Judea to Egypt.

Even though Ptolemy IV won the battle, he did not consolidate the victory for Egypt, thus fulfilling the words ‘he will not prevail’. He made a hasty peace with Antiochus III and returned to debauched living in Egypt.

**Verses 13-16**: “For the king of the North will return and muster a multitude greater than the former and shall certainly come at the end of some years with a great army and much equipment. And in those times, many shall rise up against the king of the South; also, certain violent men of your people shall exalt themselves in fulfillment of the vision, but they shall fall. So the king of the North shall come and build a siege mound, and take a fortified city; and the forces of the South shall not withstand him. Even his choice troops shall have no strength to resist. But he who comes against him shall do according to his own will, and no one shall stand against him. He shall stand in the Glorious Land with destruction in his power.”

Ptolemy IV died in 204 BC, and his infant son, Ptolemy (V) Epiphanes came to the throne. The Egyptian provinces were in turmoil because of the terrible rule of Ptolemy IV. So Antiochus III formed a coalition, assembled a great army and attacked Egypt in 201 BC. He made an alliance with Philip (V) of Macedonia and others; and according to Josephus, many Jews sympathetic to him joined him against the king of the South.

That was in fulfillment of the phrase “certain violent men of your [Daniel’s] people shall exalt themselves in fulfillment of the vision.” But the Egyptian general Scopus crushed this rebellion (v. 14).

Then the king of the North (Antiochus III) responded with another invasion. He captured the fortified city of Sidon in 198 BC, where Scopus surrendered. After capturing Sidon, Antiochus defeated Egypt at Mount Panium in 198 BC and took complete control of Judea (the “Glorious Land”).

**Verse 17**: A clearer and better translation of this verse is provided in the *Revised English Bible*: “He [the king of the North, Antiochus III] will resolve to advance with the full might of his kingdom; and, when he has agreed terms with the king of the south, he will give his young daughter in marriage to him, with a view to the destruction of the kingdom; but the treaty will not last nor will it be his purpose which is served.”

After having defeated Scopus, Antiochus III wanted to control all of Egypt. With this goal in mind, he gave his daughter Cleopatra (not the Egyptian queen of 31 BCE) to Ptolemy V in marriage. Rawlinson says on page 254, "Coele-Syria and Palestine promised as a dowry, but not delivered." He hoped that she would act in his interests. But she sided instead with her husband, frustrating her father’s purpose and thus fulfilling the words “nor will it be his purpose which is served.”

**Verses 18-19**: “After this he shall turn his face to the coastlands, and shall take many. But a ruler shall bring the reproach against them to an end; and with the reproach removed, he shall turn back on him. Then he shall turn his face toward the fortress of his own land; but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.”

When Antiochus III realized that his purpose in Egypt was frustrated, he began a campaign against islands and cities of Asia Minor and the Aegean. He also gave asylum to Hannibal of Carthage, the enemy of Rome. Hannibal assists Antiochus in landing in Greece, bringing him into conflict with Rome. The ruler who brings the reproach of defeat in Asia Minor and the Aegean coasts to an end is the young Roman general Scipio who defeated Antiochus at the Battle of Magnesia in 190 BC. The Romans deprived him of much of his territory, and took several hostages to Rome, including Antiochus’ son. In addition, Rome imposed heavy tribute upon him.

Antiochus returned to his fortress Antioch in disgrace. Unable to pay the heavy tribute demanded by the Romans, Antiochus tried to plunder the Temple of Belus in Elymais within his own kingdom. This enraged the people so much that the local forces killed him, thus fulfilling the words “Then he shall turn his face toward the fortress of his own land; but he shall stumble and fall, and not be found.”

**Verse 20**: “There shall arise in his place one who imposes taxes on the glorious kingdom; but within a few days he shall be destroyed, but not in anger or in battle.”

After Antiochus III’s death, his son Seleucus (IV) Philopater was also unable to pay the taxes to Rome (apocryphal book *2 Maccabees* 3:7-40). He sent Heliodorus, a Jew, to plunder the temple at Jerusalem. But Heliodorus obtained nothing. Seleucus later poisoned by Heliodorus was thus killed ‘but not in anger or in battle.’ Heliodorus then assumed control with the support of other Syrian officials who were tired of the excesses of the Seleucid rulers.

**Verse 21**: “And in his place shall arise a vile person, to whom they shall not give the honor of royalty; but he shall come in peaceably, and seize the kingdom by intrigue.”

In the place of Seleucus IV, his younger brother, the infamous Antiochus (IV) Ephphanes arose to whom the Syrian officials supporting Heliodorus would not give the honor of royalty. Antiochus Epiphanes had earlier been taken as hostage to Rome. But by flattery he enlisted the aid of neighboring king Eumenes II of Pergamum and officials at home in forcing out Heliodorus and obtained the throne (ruling from 175-164 BC.)  “He astonishes his subjects by an affectation of Roman manners” and “good natured profuseness” [flattery] (Rawlinson, *Manual of Ancient History*, p. 255).

**Verse 22**: “With the force of a flood they shall be swept away from before him and be broken, and also the prince of the covenant.”

Those who opposed Antiochus Epiphanes, including Heliodorus were swept away by him. The prince of the covenant referred to here is the Jewish high priest. Verse 22 is saying that Antiochus would even go so far as to murder the Jewish high priest. History confirms that Onias III was high priest in Judea at the time, and that Antiochus put him to death in 172 B.C. According to Rawlinson (*Manual of Ancient History*, p. 255), Jews “were driven to desperation by the mad project of this self-willed monarch.” Antiochus IV appointed a Hellenistic Jew who changed his name to the Greek Jason as the replacement high priest. But only after 3 years he was replaced by another Hellenizing apostate named Menelaus.

**Verses 23-24**: “And after the league is made with him he shall act deceitfully, for he shall come up and become strong with a small number of people. He shall enter peaceably, even into the richest places of the province; and he shall do what his fathers have not done, nor his forefathers: he shall disperse among them the plunder, spoil, and riches; and he shall devise his plans against the strongholds, but only for a time.”

After the Jews made a treaty with him, Antiochus Epiphanes acted deceitfully with them.  Even though he had only a small number of supporters in the beginning, he eventually gained a large following through deceit and flatteries and became strong. He entered Galilee peaceably. As a temporary ploy to gain support among the masses, Antiochus took from the rich and gave to the poor. Then he did what his fathers or forefathers had not done. Rulers before him had typically treated the Jews well. But Antiochus IV far exceeded his fathers in his ruthlessness and cruelty toward the Jews. He also imposed unbearable taxes on the Jews. Much of this struggle between the Jews and the Syrian kingdom is recorded in the apocryphal book of *Maccabees* (in the Hebrew Bible).

**Verses 25-27**: “He shall stir up his power and his courage against the king of the South with a great army. And the king of the South shall be stirred up to battle with a very great and mighty army; but he shall not stand, for they shall devise plans against him.  Yes, those who eat of the portion of his delicacies shall destroy him; his army shall be swept away, and many shall fall down slain. Both these kings’ hearts shall be bent on evil, and they shall speak lies at the same table; but it shall not prosper, for the end will still be at the appointed time.”

In this case, Antiochus IV was stirred up to war with Egypt by his nephew Ptolemy VI, the son of Ptolemy V and Antiochus IV’s sister Cleopatra. Rawlinson, pages 255-256, says, "Threatened with war by the ministers of Ptolemy Philometor [now king of the south], who claim Coele-Syria and Palestine as the dowry of Cleopatra, the late queen-mother, Antiochus marches against Egypt...B.C. 171" (pp. 277-278). But he was met by his nephew leading another immense army from Egypt.

But Ptolemy VI did not stand, for his own trusted officers plotted against him. Antiochus IV was victorious at Pelusium. Continuing in Rawlinson, p. 278: "After his victory at Pelusium, Antiochus advanced to Memphis, and having obtained possession of the young king's person [Ptolemy Philometor, king of the south], endeavored to use him as a tool for effecting the entire reduction of the country." In 174 BCE, both these kings sat at a banquet. Antiochus pretended to ally himself with the young Ptolemy, against his brother, Euergetes II, but each was trying to deceive the other. Their lies did not prosper and the outcome would be as God predetermined it.

**Verse 28**: “While returning to his own land with great riches, his heart shall be moved against the holy covenant; so he shall do damage and return to his own land.”

Antiochus while returning to Syria in 168 BCE with great plunder from Egypt, encountered another Maccabean insurrection. Verse 28 says his heart was moved against the “holy covenant,” meaning the Jewish worship system. “He shall do damage” means Antiochus looted the Jewish Temple in Jerusalem of many golden vessels and massacred many Jews. Greek historian Polybius mentioned that he “despoiled most sanctuaries.”

**Verses 29-30**: “At the appointed time he shall return and go toward the south; but it shall not be like the former or the latter. For ships from Cyprus [the actual word used is Kittim, which is Hebrew for “western lands,” here meaning Rome] shall come against him; therefore, he shall be grieved, and return in rage against the holy covenant, and do damage. So he shall return and show regard for those who forsake the holy covenant.”

In verse 29, God prophesied of a third campaign by Antiochus into Egypt. But this one did not fair well for him like the previous two successful ones. He was cut off by a Roman fleet from Cyprus. Popillius, the commander of the Roman fleet forced Antiochus IV to accept surrender terms in which he had to end his campaign against Egypt and restore the island of Cyprus to Egyptian rule. On returning home through Judea, Antiochus IV vented his frustration and anger on the Jews. He plotted with leaders inside the temple, showing favor to those who rejected the Jewish religion and adopted the pagan Greek (Hellenistic) customs, but persecuting those who remained loyal.

Antiochus did his utmost to destroy the Jewish religion, by passing laws that forbade its practice. He forced some to violate Jewish laws, and murdered them if they refused.  For example, Eleazar, an aged scribe was forced to open his mouth to eat swine’s flesh.  He refused, and himself went to the rack and was flogged to death. In another case, two women who had circumcised their children were publicly paraded around the city and then hurled down headlong from the wall. Others who had gathered together in a cave to keep the Sabbath day secretly were betrayed and all burned together. A mother and her seven sons were tortured one after the other and killed in the presence of the governor for refusing to eat swine’s flesh.

**Verse 31**: “And forces shall be mustered by him, and they shall defile the sanctuary fortress; then they shall take away the daily sacrifices, and place there the abomination of desolation.”

This verse refers to the horrid events of 168 BC which are described in *2 Maccabees* 5:11-15. Antiochus Epiphanes thought Judea was in a revolt. So he mustered his armed forces and entered Jerusalem and killed 80,000 men, women and children. He then defiled the Temple by setting up a statue of the Greek god Zeus (Rawlinson, *ibid*. p. 255) [the “abomination of desolation”] in the holy of holies – the holiest inner most place in the Temple - and sacrificed a pig on the temple altar. He stopped the daily sacrifice and tried to stamp out the Jewish religion completely.

**Verses 32-35**: “Those who do wickedly against the covenant he shall corrupt with flattery; but the people who know their God shall be strong, and carry out great exploits. And those of the people who understand shall instruct many; yet for many days they shall fall by sword and flame, by captivity and plundering. Now when they shall fall, they shall be aided with a little help; but many shall join with them by intrigue. And some of those of understanding shall fall, to refine them, purge them, and make them white, until the time of the end; because it is still for the appointed time.”

Antiochus IV corrupted the apostate Jews with flattery and rewards for forsaking their religion and adopting Hellenistic culture. Many Jews succumbed to his persecution and rewards for apostasy.

But the time frame of the prophecy changes in verse 32 and has a dual aspect. It refers to people who knew their God at that time, the Maccabees, [who were the patriotic followers of Judas Maccabeus of the Hasmonian priestly dynasty and were determined to continue to keep God’s law] and later the Christians.

The Maccabees resisted Antiochus Epiphanes and his successors. When an officer of Antiochus came to the city of Modein to enforce Antiochus’ decree concerning idolatrous worship, Mattathias, the leading priest slew him. Then Mattathias fled to the hills and led a band of guerrillas. Thus began the Maccabees revolt against Antiochus.

Mattathias was helped in his cause by his five sons, particularly Judas, nick-named Maqqaba (Aramaic for hammer, from which the name Maccabees is derived). Many of these patriots died for the cause. But their heroism ultimately drove the Syrians out of the country.

In their dual aspect, these verses also refer to the true Christians and the Church, prophesying their coming mighty works of instructing many and converting them to Christianity, and their persecution by sword, flame, captivity and plundering. When they are persecuted, God would help them with a little help (which would include God’s holy spirit, giving them tremendous strength to remain faithful even when faced with martyrdom), but would allow many to be martyred to test and try them and purge them. Others would infiltrate the Churches by intrigue. Some of the true Christians would be martyred, to purge them, refine their character and make them spiritually white or pure.  This would go on till the time of the end, meaning the return of Jesus Christ.

Verse 35 refers to the “time of the end.” This means that the previous verses were prophecies that applied to the contests between the Seleucid and Egyptian dynasties, and later to the Seleucids and the Jewish patriots, the Maccabees. Thus we have seen that these verses have been precisely fulfilled in history, from the rule of Cyrus the Great to the time of the Maccabees.

**Verse 36**: “Then the king shall do according to his own will: he shall exalt and magnify himself above every god, shall speak blasphemies against the God of gods, and shall prosper till the wrath has been accomplished; for what has been determined shall be done.”

The prophecy now shifts to New Testament times. In 65 BCE Rome took possession of Syria [hence Judea as well] which became a Roman province. The Roman emperor now became the king of the North. Verse 36 is an apt description of Roman emperors who did according to their will, instituting emperor worship, thus exalting themselves above God. The phrase “shall prosper till the wrath has been accomplished” means that the Roman Empire will persist in some form or another right till the very end, when Jesus Christ shall return and God’s wrath on the Roman Empire will be completed.

**Verse 37**: “He shall regard neither the God [correct rendering is ‘gods’] of his fathers nor the desire of women, nor regard any god; for he shall magnify himself above them all.”

The Roman emperors did not regard their old Roman gods. The phrase they also did not have “a desire for women” indicates that the emperors were either homosexuals (14 of the first 15 emperors were actually homosexuals) or exalted themselves above the Babylonian god Tammuz for whom women wept. Roman emperors did not regard any of these gods because they instituted emperor worship and magnified themselves above all these gods.

**Verses 38-39**: “But in their place he shall honor a god of fortresses [or forces, KJV]; and a god which his fathers did not know he shall honor with gold and silver, with precious stones and pleasant things. Thus, he shall act against the strongest fortresses with a foreign god, which he shall acknowledge, and advance its glory; and he shall cause them to rule over many, and divide the land for gain.”

The Roman emperors demanded worship of the emperor as well as the empire itself because of its strength. Standards were idolatrous emblems of empire/emperor worship. In addition, enormous defense expenditures made Rome the strongest military power the world had ever seen till that time, thus fulfilling the prophecy “he shall honor the god of forces”.

But then, beginning with Constantine the Great in 313 AD, Roman emperors began to honor a god, the pope of the false Church based in Rome, that his fathers did not know, with gold, silver, precious stones and other pleasant things.

Later Roman emperors, and after that rulers of later resurrections of the Roman Empire began to act against the strongest enemy states and religious institutions on behalf of the foreign god [the papacy, which was of Babylonian origin, the original Babylonian Mystery Religion]. They acknowledged the papacy as a god and worked to advance its glory. They caused the popes to rule over many peoples and divided the land for the benefit of both church and state. The pope calls himself the Vicar of Christ, meaning “in place of Christ.” Thus, the pope calls himself a ‘god’ in place of Christ.

Verses 36-39 covered the centuries from the beginning of Christianity in the early Roman Empire to the origin of the Catholic Church and the Catholic-dominated Holy Roman Empire with its seven resurrections right down to our modern times. The seventh resurrection is yet in the near future.

Thus, we see a demonstration of God’s Almighty power in first prophesying these events and then fulfilling them unerringly. Individual kings, queens and generals are mentioned and what each would do. All these prophecies have been fulfilled. All this is ancient history. It would serve no purpose in our time to record all this other than to convince the skeptic beyond a shadow of doubt that God of the Bible has total and complete control in the affairs of men. God can raise men and women, foretell what they would do centuries in advance, and bring it to pass unerringly demonstrating His total control over the lives of individuals, including kings. Besides being a demonstration of God’s Almighty power, fulfillment of such intricate and detailed prophecies is also proof that the Bible is the true inspired word of God. Each and every word in it is God inspired and can be relied upon. Book of no other religion dares to prophesy like this the fulfillment of which can be proven by history.

Now the remaining verses of Daniel 11 move to the time frame called “the time of the end”, yet in the future, to the time of the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.

**Verses 40-45**: “40 And at the time of the end shall the king of the south [which from other prophecies will be an alliance headed by an Islamic power] push at him: and the king of the north [which since the time of the Roman Empire has always been the Roman Empire or the Holy Roman Empire] shall come against him like a whirlwind , with chariots, and with horsemen, and with many ships; and he shall enter into the countries, and shall overflow and pass over. 41 He shall enter also into the glorious land, and many countries shall be overthrown: but these shall escape out of his hand, even Edom, and Moab, and the chief of the children of Ammon. 42 He shall stretch forth his hand also upon the countries: and the land of Egypt shall not escape. 43 But he shall have power over the treasures of gold and of silver, and over all the precious things of Egypt: and the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps. 44 But tidings out of the east and out of the north shall trouble him: therefore, he shall go forth with great fury to destroy, and utterly to make away many. 45 And he shall plant the tabernacles of his palace between the seas in the glorious holy mountain; yet he shall come to his end, and none shall help him.”

These verses describe yet a future war between the King of the North, a European alliance headed by a military dictator, in all likelihood a German, and the King of the South, an Islamic alliance. The King of the North defeats the King of the South. He will then likely set up his regional headquarters in the holy land, but mobilization of the Kings of the East will trouble him. He will go forth in his fury to destroy them. But God prophecies that he shall come to his end at the second coming of Jesus Christ, and no one will help him.

This prophecy is described in summary form in the article titled “*Summary of Sequence of End-Time Events,*” and in detail in my book “*World in Bible Prophecy*,” both available free at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 10

**PROOF # 3(e) - PROPHECIES ABOUT THE MESSIAH FULFILLED**

The New Testament is all about Jesus Christ as the Messiah. Let’s examine Old Testament prophecies that Jesus fulfilled to prove that He was indeed the prophesied Messiah to come. These fulfilled prophecies provide proof that both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible are indeed the word of God.

**Can Prophecies be Fulfilled by Coincidence?**

One can argue that prophecies by an individual can be fulfilled by coincidence. One individual can fulfill one prophecy in his life by chance. The probability of the same individual fulfilling two prophecies is less. The same individual fulfilling three prophecies by coincidence reduces further exponentially. The same individual fulfilling four prophecies becomes further remote and so on.

The Jewish scriptures prophesied the coming of the Messiah and gave many prophecies about His birth, life, and death that He would fulfill so that we may recognize Who He was. Literally God’s truthfulness and His Almighty Power are at stake if these prophecies were not fulfilled.

Peter the apostle confirmed in Acts 3:18: “18 But those things which God foretold by the mouth of all His prophets, that the Christ would suffer, He has thus fulfilled.” He also stated in 2 Peter 1:16: "For we did not follow cunningly devised fables when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but were eyewitnesses of His majesty." Peter also warned in 2 Peter 3:2-4 to "be mindful of the words which were spoken before by the holy prophets" because "scoffers will come in the last days" questioning and ridiculing Scripture, "saying, 'where is the promise of His coming?'"

As God and Jesus Christ fulfilled all their prophecies about ancient empires and nations, they certainly would have made sure to fulfill their prophecies about the life, death and resurrection of the Messiah. Let’s now look at specific Old Testament prophecies that foretold the birth, life and death of the Messiah which Jesus fulfilled.

The UCG booklet: “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” states on p. 16:

“To claim that you are God is one thing—but to convince people that you are indeed what you say you are, is quite another. So how did Jesus' closest followers come to be so convinced that they would lay down their lives for that belief?

“Many Old Testament prophecies of the Messiah were fulfilled in precise detail by Jesus of Nazareth. Neither the Jews nor the disciples of Jesus understood at the time that Jesus was fulfilling the messianic prophecies of the Old Testament—even though at times He told them this was the case (Luke 18:31; Matthew 26: 56).

“After Jesus was resurrected, He began to help His disciples understand the Scriptures, and the disciples were inspired to declare that Jesus was indeed the Messiah. The proof they offered was the very Scriptures [or prophecies] they had not previously understood.”

Then on p 18: “The New Testament writers cite messianic prophecies from the Old Testament more than 130 times. By some estimates the Old Testament contains 300 prophetic passages that describe who the Messiah is and what He will do. Of these, 60 are major prophecies. What are the chances of these prophecies being fulfilled in one person?

“…the mathematical odds that all of these prophecies could have converged by chance in the events of the life of Jesus are staggeringly minute—to the point of eliminating any such possibility.

“Astronomer and mathematician Peter Stoner, in his book Science Speaks, offers a mathematical analysis showing that it is impossible that the precise statements about the One to come could be fulfilled in a single person by mere coincidence.

“The chance of only eight of these dozens of prophecies being fulfilled in the life of one man has been estimated at 1 in 10 to the 17th power. That would be 1 chance in 100,000,000,000,000,000.

“How can we put this in terms we can comprehend? Dr. Stoner illustrates the odds with this scenario: "Take 1017 silver dollars and lay them on the face of Texas [with its approximate land area of 262,000 square miles]. They will cover all of the state two feet deep. Now mark one of these silver dollars and stir the whole mass thoroughly, all over the state. Blindfold a man and tell him that he can travel as far as he wishes, but he must pick up one silver dollar and say that this is the right one [that was marked].

"What chance would he have of getting the right one? Just the same chance that the prophets would have had of writing these eight prophecies and having them all come true in any one man."

“But that is only eight of the dozens of prophecies of the Messiah. Using the science of probability, the chance of as many as 48 of these prophecies coming to pass in one person is 1 in 10 to the 157th power—a 1 followed by 157 zeros (1963, pp. 100-109).

“One or two fulfillments in Jesus' life could be dismissed as coincidental. But when the instances of fulfilled prophecies are counted up, the law of probability quickly reaches the point where mere probability becomes certainty. This is one of the proofs Jesus was the promised Messiah—the messianic prophecies were accurately and precisely fulfilled in Him.”

Many aspects of Jesus' birth, life, suffering and death were prophesied in great detail before they actually happened. Let’s look at these prophecies.

***The Virgin Birth***

Isaiah 7:14 prophesied, "Behold, a virgin shall conceive and bear a Son, and shall call His name Immanuel."

Details about the fulfillment of this prophecy are provided by the gospel writers Luke and Matthew. Matthew 1:18-23 (NKJV) states, “18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was as follows: After His mother Mary was betrothed to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Spirit. 19 Then Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not wanting to make her a public example, was minded to put her away secretly. 20 But while he thought about these things, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take to you Mary your wife, for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit. 21 And she will bring forth a Son, and you shall call His name Jesus, for He will save His people from their sins." 22 So all this was done that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying: 23 "Behold, the virgin shall be with child, and bear a Son, and they shall call His name Immanuel," which is translated, "God with us."

The virgin birth was also prophesied at the time when Adam and Eve ate of the forbidden fruit. Genesis 3:15 (NKJV) stated the curse on the serpent, or Satan, “15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He shall bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel." The woman’s Seed is in the singular meaning one man and not her descendants. Here the curse on the serpent does not state that her Seed would be Adam’s Seed as well, but only the woman’s Seed, thus pointing to a virgin birth of the Messiah who would bruise Satan’s head by remaining sinless and qualifying to remove Satan from the rulership of the earth.

No Israelite except Jesus has ever claimed a virgin birth. That literally excludes everyone except Jesus being the Messiah.

**Descendant of Abraham and King David**

God promised Abraham in Genesis 12:3 (NKJV), “…And in you all the families of the earth shall be blessed." The same promise is repeated in Genesis 18:18 and 22:18. The promise was passed on to Abraham’s son Isaac (Genesis 26:4) and onto his son Jacob (Genesis 28:14).

Then the promise of the scepter, or rulership was passed on by Jacob to his son Judah in Genesis 49:10, “The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet…” Since the rulership forever will belong to the Messiah, this prophecy implies that the Messiah would be a descendant of Judah. This was confirmed by Isaiah the prophet in Isaiah 11:1-2 to David’s father Jesse, “1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots: 2 And the spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord.”

Jeremiah the prophet confirmed that the Messiah would be a descendant of David in Jeremiah 23:5, “5 Behold, the days come, says the Lord, that I will raise unto David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and prosper, and shall execute judgment and justice in the earth.”

Paul the apostle confirmed in Galatians 3:16 that the promises to Abraham were fulfilled in Jesus Christ, “16 Now to Abraham and his Seed were the promises made. He does not say, "And to seeds," as of many, but as of one, "And to your Seed," who is Christ.”

Matthew and Luke provide detailed genealogies of Jesus to show that He was a descendant of King David both on his mother’s and father’s side, thus fulfilling these prophecies.

**Messiah to Come from Bethlehem**

The place the Messiah would come from was prophesied in Micah 5:2 (NKJV), “But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah, though you are little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of you shall come forth to Me the One to be Ruler in Israel, whose goings forth are from of old, from everlasting."

When Herod inquired of the Jews where the King of the Jews would come from, they had no hesitation in referring to this prophecy (Matthew 2:5-8).

This prophecy was very precise. There were two Bethlehems, one in the land of Judah and the other in the land of Zebulun to the north. The prophecy was specific in stating that the Ruler would come from Bethlehem in Judea. That Jesus was born in Bethlehem Ephrathah in Judea is confirmed in Matthew 2:1.

**The Exact Year the Messiah Would Appear was Prophesied**

Daniel 9:25 (NKJV) prophesied when the Messiah would appear: “25 "Know therefore and understand, That from the going forth of the command To restore and build Jerusalem Until Messiah the Prince, There shall be seven weeks and sixty-two weeks; The street shall be built again, and the wall, Even in troublesome times.”

This prophecy provides the number of years from the time the decree to build Jerusalem would be issued till the appearance of the Messiah as seven plus 62 weeks or a total of 69 weeks. Sixty-nine weeks would number 483 days. There is a principle of a year for a day in fulfillment of prophecy. When Israelite spies spied out the land of Canaan for 40 days and refused to go in and possess the land they were punished for 40 years. In the same way the prophesied Day of the Lord will be of one year duration in its fulfillment. So, 483 days of this prophecy would equal 483 years till the appearing of the Messiah from the time the decree to build the walls of Jerusalem would be issued.

UCG booklet “*Jesus Christ: The Real Story*” on p. 21 describes how this prophecy was fulfilled:

 “After Jerusalem's destruction by the Babylonians in 586 B.C., the Babylonian Empire was succeeded by the Medo-Persian Empire. This empire's kings issued several such decrees that were recorded in the Bible (by Cyrus in 538 B.C., found in Ezra 1:1-2, and by Darius in 520 B.C., described in Ezra 6:8).

“But the one that was issued by Artaxerxes Longimanus in 457 B.C. (Ezra 7:11-26) points us specifically to Christ's ministry. Counting 483 years from the 457 B.C. date of this decree brings us to A.D. 27 (keep in mind that because there is no year "0" in our modern calendars we have to add one year to the calculation).

“A.D. 27 was a significant year. Jesus was baptized this year and began His public ministry.

“The Jews of Christ's day were certainly familiar with Daniel's prophecy. And regardless of which decree one might choose as the starting point of the 483 years, the time for the Messiah to appear had elapsed during Jesus' day. Messianic fervor was rampant with the realization that the fulfillment of this prophecy was near at hand (compare John 1:41; 4:25).

 “If the Messiah was to come, He would have to arrive on the scene just when Jesus did—in the exact year!”

**The Lamb of God**

When one considers the prophecy in Micah about the ruler to come and the fact that the Messiah would be a descendant of King David, one can understand why the Jews in Jesus’ day would think that the Messiah would be a conquering King who would deliver them from Roman rule and restore Israel to a glorious state as a nation. None of these prophecies specifically pointed to the Messiah being a sacrifice for sins. Nobody could have connected the sacrificial system with the sacrifice of the Messiah as the Lamb of God. Isaiah 53 specifically prophesied about the death and suffering of One, but these prophecies could not be specifically connected to the Messiah by human reasoning alone. The Jews were focused on the Messiah being a conquering King.

Only when the angel announced the conception of Jesus Christ was it first revealed in Matthew 1:21 that His life would be connected with delivering Israel from their sins. Only after Jesus’ sacrifice was it revealed to His disciples that He was the Lamb of God who took away the sins of mankind. But John the Baptist had declared it to be so.

John the Baptist said of Jesus in John 1:29, “29 The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him, and said, "Behold! The Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world!”

Killing of the Passover lambs on the 14th day of the first month in ancient Israel was a prophecy about the sacrifice of the Messiah as the Lamb of God to be sacrificed for the sins of mankind. Jesus Christ fulfilled this prophecy by being arrested, tried, crucified and dying on the exact day the Passover lambs were sacrificed.

Hebrews 10:4 (NKJV) says, “4 For it is not possible that the blood of bulls and goats could take away sins.” But verses 12-14 state that the sacrifice of Jesus Christ was the offering for sin once and for all, “12 But this Man, after He had offered one sacrifice for sins forever, sat down at the right hand of God, 13 from that time waiting till His enemies are made His footstool. 14 For by one offering He has perfected forever those who are being sanctified.”

Hebrews 10:8-10 state, “8 Previously saying, "Sacrifice and offering, burnt offerings, and offerings for sin You did not desire, nor had pleasure in them" (which are offered according to the law), 9 then He said, "Behold, I have come to do Your will, O God." He takes away the first that He may establish the second. 10 By that will we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.”

The author of Hebrews here explains that the sacrificial system God instituted in ancient Israel in the Law was a representation of Jesus' sacrifice that would take away the first, meaning the sacrificial system, replacing it with His sacrifice as the price paid for sin once and for all to sanctify the people

The life of the Creator was of more value than the lives of all His creation put together.  That’s why the shed blood of the Creator could pay for the sins of all His creation. Thus, the sacrificial system of ancient Israel, but particularly the Passover lambs were a prophecy about the sacrifice of the Messiah.

**Betrayal, Suffering and Death of the Messiah**

Many prophecies concerning the betrayal, suffering and death were fulfilled by Jesus Christ. The sheer number of prophecies fulfilled now leaves no doubt that all these prophecies could not be fulfilled by one particular man by coincidence. They leave no doubt that Jesus Christ was the prophesied Messiah. Here are some of the prophecies fulfilled by Jesus Christ:

• Messiah would be betrayed by a familiar friend. This was prophesied in Psalm 41:9, "Even my own familiar friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted up his heel against me." This prophecy was fulfilled by Judas Iscariot as stated in John 13.

• Messiah would be forsaken by His followers was prophesied in Zechariah 13:7: "Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered." This was fulfilled when all His disciples forsook Him and fled when He was arrested (Mark 14:50).

• The price of His betrayal would be 30 pieces of silver. This was prophesied in Zechariah 11:12-13: "…so they weighed out for my wages thirty pieces of silver. 13 And the Lord said to me, "Throw it to the potter"--that princely price they set on me.” This was fulfilled when Judas Iscariot covenanted for 30 pieces of silver with the chief priests to betray Jesus (Matthew 26:14-15).

• That Messiah would be put to death with criminals was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "And He was numbered with the transgressors." This was fulfilled when "two robbers were crucified with Him, one on the right and another on the left" (Matthew 27:38).

• Messiah would be crucified. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:16: "They pierced My hands and My feet." Remarkably, this prophecy described a form of execution, the crucifixion, which would not come into practice for some 800 years after it was written.

• Messiah’s body would be pierced. This was prophesied in (Zechariah 12:10): "They will look on Me whom they pierced". In fulfillment John tells us in John 19:34 that "One of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out."

• Messiah would be offered vinegar and gall. This was prophesied in Psalm 69:21: "They also gave me gall for my food, and for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink.  This was fulfilled when Jesus was offered vinegar with gall to drink as stated in Matthew 27:34, “34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall.”

• None of His bones would be broken was prophesied in Psalm 34:20: "He guards all his bones; not one of them is broken." When the Jews came to break the legs of the 3 crucified men, they did not break Jesus’ legs because He had already died on the cross when the Roman soldier pierced His side with a spear, as described in John 19:32-34.

• People would cast lots for His clothing. This was prophesied in Psalm 22:18: "They divide My garments among them, and for My clothing they cast lots". John confirms in John 19:23-24 that this prophecy was fulfilled.

Messiah would not retaliate was prophesied in Isaiah 53:7 (NKJV): "He was oppressed, and He was afflicted, yet He opened not His mouth; He was led as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before its shearers is silent, so He opened not His mouth." Its fulfillment is described in Matthew 27:12-14: “12 And while He was being accused by the chief priests and elders, He answered nothing. 13 Then Pilate said to Him, "Do You not hear how many things they testify against You?" 14 But He answered him not one word, so that the governor marveled greatly.”

Messiah would pray for those who would have Him put to death. This was prophesied in Isaiah 53:12: "He... made intercession for the transgressors." This was fulfilled when Jesus prayed on the cross, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they do." (Luke 23:34).

Thus, we see that the God of the Bible prophesied in detail the manner of the death of the Messiah and all the prophecies were fulfilled in precise detail in the crucifixion and death of Jesus Christ. Probabilistically it is impossible for a particular one man to fulfill all the prophecies by mere coincidence. Therefore, we can be certain that Jesus was the prophesied Messiah and He died for the sins of mankind as God foretold.

Despite so many prophecies being fulfilled, some still argue that Jesus contrived to fulfill these prophecies.

**Was fulfillment of Prophecies Contrived?**

Some critics argue that Jesus manipulated events to fulfill prophecies. One example they site is in Matthew 21:1-7 (NKJV) where Jesus instructed His disciples to procure a donkey and its colt to fulfill the prophecy, “5 "Tell the daughter of Zion, 'Behold, your King is coming to you, lowly, and sitting on a donkey, a colt, the foal of a donkey.' " 6 So the disciples went and did as Jesus commanded them. 7 They brought the donkey and the colt, laid their clothes on them, and set Him on them.”

Another example is given in Luke 22:37-38 (NKJV) in which Jesus made sure that His disciples had swords so that He could be numbered with the transgressors or criminals, “37 For I say to you that this which is written must still be accomplished in Me: 'And He was numbered with the transgressors.' For the things concerning Me have an end." 38 So they said, "Lord, look, here are two swords." And He said to them, "It is enough."

Jesus as God of the Old Testament had prophesied in Isaiah 46:11, “Indeed I have spoken it; I will also bring it to pass…” In His life as a human He brought everything to pass precisely as He prophesied.

But the notion that Jesus manipulated events to fulfill prophecies is so far-fetched. Just imagine as a human being the kind and number of events He would have had to contrive to fulfill all the prophecies.

He would have had to manipulate His human ancestry, His place and year of birth, and virgin birth. He would have had to manipulate events with Roman and Jewish authorities to fulfill all the prophecies related to His suffering, crucifixion and death. And what purpose could He have had in manipulating events to fulfill prophecies? All to die a horrible death preceded by terrible suffering? People were willing to make Him King (John 6:15, 12:12-19), but He avoided the opportunity and chose the route of suffering and death. What purpose would manipulating events that would lead to His suffering and death have served? Thus, the theory that He contrived to fulfill all the prophecies is sheer nonsense.

Jesus fulfilled all the prophecies to fulfill God’s purpose. He chose to become a humble servant to suffer and die to pay the death penalty for the sins of mankind and “give His life a ransom for many (Matthew 20:28). A person of such character could not have been a deceiver, charlatan or a fake who would manipulate events for personal gain.  He had nothing personal to gain by dying.

Peter stated, "...Those things which God foretold by the mouth of all His prophets, that the Christ would suffer, He [Jesus] has thus fulfilled" (Acts 3:18).

Paul confirmed that "Christ died for our sins according to the Scriptures" and that "He was buried, and ...He rose again the third day according to the Scriptures" (1 Corinthians 15:3-4).

Jesus fulfilled prophecies foretold 300 – 1000 years ahead of time so that we may believe without any shadow of doubt that He was the Messiah. Fulfilled prophecies are proof that the Bible is indeed the inspired word of God as Jesus Himself affirmed.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 11

**PROOF # 3(f) PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN OUR TIMES**

Not only have prophecies been fulfilled in the distant past, many end-time prophecies have already been fulfilled and/or are being fulfilled. Here are some of them:

**Gospel of the Kingdom Shall be Preached**

One of the most important prophecies given by Jesus Christ about the end time is stated in Matthew 24:3-4, 14 (NIV), “3 As Jesus was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately. “Tell us,” they said, “when will this happen, and what will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?” 4 Jesus answered…14 And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come.”

After the original apostles passed away, no one ever preached the good news of the return of Jesus Christ to set up God’s Kingdom. In 1843-1845, William Miller of the Baptist Church predicted that Jesus Christ will return sometime between March 21, 1843 and March 21, 1844. When Jesus Christ did not return, then the date of April 18, 1844 was briefly set. When that date came and went, recalculations were done, and a date of October 10, 1844 was set for the return of Jesus Christ. That too turned out to be a great disappointment.

Even in recent times, people of other faiths have also predicted the end of the world, but all have proved to be false prophets.

However, Jesus prophesied that the gospel (meaning good news) of the establishment of the kingdom would be preached in the whole world before the end of the age. The establishment of God’s Kingdom, however, is preceded by catastrophic events. That too was predicted in the same prophecy by Jesus Christ in Matthew 24:3-14, 21-22:

“3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of your coming, and of the end of the world? 4 And Jesus answered and said unto them, Take heed that no man deceive you. 5 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many. 6 And you shall hear of wars and rumors of wars: see that you be not troubled: for all these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. 7 For nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom: and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in diverse places. 8 All these are the beginning of sorrows.

“9 Then shall they deliver you up to be afflicted and shall kill you: and you shall be hated of all nations for my name's sake. 10 And then shall many be offended, and shall betray one another, and shall hate one another. 11 And many false prophets shall rise and shall deceive many. 12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold. 13 But he that shall endure unto the end, the same shall be saved.

“14 And this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.”

“21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And except those days should be shortened, there should no flesh be saved: but for the elect's sake those days shall be shortened.”

Jesus prophesied that just before His return, world conditions would be such that the world would be on the brink of annihilation. He will then return and put an end to man’s madness.

No one has ever preached that part of the warning message to the world because no one clearly understood Bible prophecy. However, Jesus prophesied that before His return and the end of the age, the gospel will be preached in the whole world as a testimony against the world. That prophecy has been fulfilled, and is being fulfilled as you read this book, and by my messages delivered every week on Saturdays at 9.00 AM, USA Eastern Standard Time, which anyone can hear in his own language by just tuning his ear to hear them.

That prophecy began to be fulfilled when in September – October of 1917, Herbert W. Armstrong’s wife Loma Armstrong had a dream in which angels appeared to her to let her know that God had a special work for Herbert Armstrong and her to perform. Herbert Armstrong thought nothing of the dream but was then knocked down financially as his businesses were wiped out during the Great Depression. He was also challenged to research into religion because his wife started keeping the Sabbath (from Friday sunset to Saturday sunset). What he discovered changed his life. His mind was opened to the understanding of prophecy, and he realized that he had been commissioned by God to preach the gospel of the kingdom of God to the whole world in fulfillment of Matthew 24:14. That preaching began in autumn of 1928 when he gave his first sermon to the Church of God.

Since that time, Herbert Armstrong preached the gospel till his death on January 16, 1986. Since then the Church of God has been preaching the same gospel message. My weekly messages are part of the same preaching in fulfillment of the prophecy in Matthew 24:14.

**Prophesied Elijah has Already Come and Gone**

God through Malachi the prophet prophesied in Malachi 4:5-6, “5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord: 6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse” [translated as ‘destruction’ in the Complete Jewish Bible].

This prophecy has already been fulfilled by Herbert W. Armstrong. But how do we prove that Herbert W. Armstrong was Elijah the prophet God sent?

From a reading of this prophecy no one would be able to recognize who would fulfill the role of Elijah the prophet. Would he be a great psychologist or a great religious leader who would preach a convincing message of “putting father back as the head of the family” or a message about bringing families together or ‘Focus on the Family”? Many preachers and psychologists preach such messages. So, this prophecy cannot be understood by reading only the Old Testament. The key to understanding this prophecy is found in the New Testament.

**Proof that Herbert W. Armstrong was the Prophesied Elijah God Sent**

Malachi also wrote in 3:1-2: “1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me...” This means that one in the spirit and power of Elijah would come in the end time to prepare for the coming of the Messiah.

In the New Testament Jesus Christ unlocked the key to recognizing who the Elijah would be through his commission. Jesus’ disciples asked Him in Matthew 17:10-13: “10… Why then say the scribes that Elias [Elijah] must first come? 11 And Jesus answered and said unto them, Elias truly shall first come, and restore all things. 12 But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed [wished]…13 Then the disciples understood that He spoke to them of John the Baptist.”

Because this prophet was to come in the spirit and power of Elijah, he would fulfill the role that Elijah the prophet fulfilled in ancient Israel. In Elijah’s time Israel had departed from the true God and had started worshipping Baal and other pagan gods. In the entire nation only 7,000 were left who had not worshipped Baal. Elijah came and restored worship of the true God in ancient Israel.

John the Baptist came and prepared the way for the first coming of Jesus Christ. But when Jesus discussed this prophecy with the disciples, John the Baptist had already come and been beheaded by Herod. He could not have restored anything after his death. This means that the prophecy Jesus gave was about an end-time Elijah who would come and prepare the way for the second coming of Jesus Christ by restoring all things, meaning the truths concerning the true God, all the true doctrines and the right way to worship God. Malachi 4:5-6 also prophesied that the Elijah would come just before the Day of the Lord. And the Day of the Lord is in the end time. It is the last one year of the three and a half year long Great Tribulation. That is yet in the future.

The modern Elijah would fulfill a similar role. He would restore correct worship of the true God in spiritual Israel, which is God’s true Church.

What are the “all things” Jesus referred to that one coming in the spirit and power of Elijah would restore? Just as the original Elijah restored worship of the true God in ancient Israel, and one in the spirit and power of Elijah before the first coming of Jesus Christ, meaning John the Baptist restored the worship of the true God in the correct way, another prophet in the spirit and power of Elijah would be sent before the second coming of Jesus Christ to restore the worship of the true God in the right way.

There was no New Testament Church when the original Elijah or John the Baptist came. So, they could restore the worship of the true God only based on the understanding provided by the prophets before them. But for the end-time Elijah, the restoration of all things would also additionally require restoring all the doctrines laid down by Jesus Christ and established by the apostles in the original Church, the knowledge of which had been lost over the centuries.

The Elijah to be sent in the end time is also twice mentioned by Jesus Christ as more than a prophet in Matthew 11:9 and Luke 7:26: “But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and more than a prophet.”

In Church rankings, only an apostle ranks higher than a prophet as mentioned in 1 Corinthians 12:28: “And God has appointed these in the church: first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, administrations, varieties of tongues.” Mr. Armstrong thus was more than a prophet in Jesus’ words because he was an apostle as well. It was necessary for this Elijah to have the rank of an apostle as well because he would be required to restore and establish doctrine since only apostles could establish doctrine.

This end-time commission of an Elijah-like prophet was so important that in September- October 1917, Mr. Armstrong was appointed to fulfill this commission through a dream to his wife Mrs. Loma Armstrong which he described in Volume 1 of his *autobiography*, pages 203-205.

In the dream Mrs. Armstrong was with Mr. Armstrong and saw a solid mass of brilliant stars filling the sky and then vanishing. She realized these were angels. Then 3 angels appeared and one of them put his arm around both of them. The angel told them that Christ was really coming in a very short time.

Mr. Armstrong writes: “At that time, we had been going quite regularly to motion-picture theatres. She asked the angel if this were wrong. He replied Christ had important work for us to do, preparing for His coming – there would be no time for “movies.”

Thus, Mr. Armstrong was specifically commissioned to prepare for the second coming of Jesus Christ to earth. He restored all things as Jesus prophesied about the end-time Elijah who was also an apostle.

James describes in James 5:10 the mark of a true prophet of God: “10 My brethren, take the prophets, who spoke in the name of the Lord, as an example of suffering and patience.”

The mark of a true prophet of God is suffering and patience. Mr. Armstrong endured a great deal of suffering patiently to establish the Philadelphian era of God’s Church, as described in his two-volume autobiography, available free of charge from the Philadelphia Church of God at its web site www.pcog.org.

Mr. Armstrong mentioned several times that he spent 28 years in grinding poverty. In his autobiography he described how many times there was no food in the house with little children, housing was always a problem, much of the time he usually had only one threadbare suit to wear and the family was clothed with mended used clothing, how he had to battle ministers and wolves in sheep’s clothing who had entered the Church and tried to destroy it in its infancy.

He had to struggle to start Ambassador College to train young men for the ministry. After that effort was successful and God’s Church started growing, Satan was implanting tares in the Church regularly. These infiltrators led rebellions in the early 1970s and late 1970s when leading evangelists and ministers caused splits and led away thousands of members from the Church. At one time they induced the state of California to put the Church in receivership, impound all its assets and take over the Church. But Mr. Armstrong’s explanation through advertisements in the Wall Street Journal of what the Attorney General of California was doing was illegal led to the lawsuit being withdrawn and the receivership proceedings ended. This was another attempt by Satan that could have destroyed the Church.

God built the modern era of His Church through the blood, sweat and total selfless sacrifice of Herbert W. Armstrong. Surely no man with his own intelligence and strength could have overcome all the obstacles that Mr. Armstrong overcame. These are proofs that God Himself was leading His end-time work through Mr. Armstrong. His lifelong suffering for the sake of God’s work proves that he was a true prophet of God.

**Prophecies Fulfilled by Herbert W. Armstrong’s Life**

Further proof that Herbert W. Armstrong was the one sent by God in the spirit and power of Elijah the prophet and an apostle is provided by the fulfillment of many prophecies in his life that the end-time Elijah and apostle was to fulfill.

*1)  Elijah the Prophet*

We have already seen that Mr. Armstrong fulfilled the prophecy of Malachi the prophet as one in the spirit and power of Elijah the prophet coming before the dreadful day of the Lord which is the last one year of the three and a half years of the Great Tribulation. He also fulfilled Jesus Christ’s prophecy that he would restore all the doctrines and truths to God’s true Church before His return to earth. He restored 18 major doctrines or truths to God’s Church. You can read all about them in the booklet “*Fundamental Beliefs of the United Church of God*,” available free at www.ucg.org.

*2)  Preaching the Gospel as a Witness unto All Nations*

As already mentioned, he fulfilled the prophecy in Matthew 24:14 that ‘this gospel of the kingdom shall be preached in all the world for a witness unto all nations; and then shall the end come.’ All of Christianity preaches about Jesus Christ’s sacrifice for forgiveness of sins of mankind, but no one knew that the gospel was mainly about the literal Kingdom of God. Herbert Armstrong first of all restored the knowledge that the gospel is about the reestablishment of the Kingdom of God on earth, and not only the forgiveness of sins through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ, and started preaching it. It went global beginning in 1953 when it began to be preached in Europe and then the rest of the world after having been preached only in the North American continent.

*3)  Prophecy that One Man Would Start and End an Era of the Church*

God founded the modern era of His Church through Mr. Armstrong. God’s Church since its founding in 31 A.D. was prophesied to go through 7 eras mentioned in the Book of Revelation, chapters 2 and 3 in the Bible. These eras are Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamos, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea. The modern era which we identify as the Philadelphian era began with the preaching of Mr. Armstrong around the fall of 1928 and ended with his death on January 16, 1986. Then began the Laodicean era of God’s Church! This is indicated by certain prophecies.

Zechariah 4:9 states: “The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, his hands shall also finish it.”

Mr. Armstrong told all the Church members that he fulfilled this Zerubbabel office. His entire ministry is testimony to the fact that Mr. Armstrong built the house, which is a symbol for an era of the Church, by restoring all things. Mr. Gerald Flurry, pastor general of the Philadelphia Church of God explains this prophecy in his booklet *Malachi’s Message* (available free of charge at www.pcog.org) on p. 59:

“When the Bible refers directly to Christ doing the building, it is usually stated as “not made with hands” (2 Corinthians 5:1), or something is accomplished “without hands” (Daniel 2:45), or “a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands” (Hebrews 9:11).

“The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it …” (Zechariah 4:9). This verse is clearly talking about a “hands-on” operation.

“It twice mentions hands, designating a starting and finishing of a project. The Anchor Bible Commentary says “hands” is literal and expresses participation in temple building. That is, it was built through a human being with “hands,” not built “without hands”—as Christ does it without the use of a human instrument.

“Mr. Armstrong wrote a letter to the Church on March 19, 1981. Here is an excerpt from that letter: “Zerubbabel built the second temple to which Jesus came the first time. John the Baptist prepared the way before the FIRST coming. But WHO was to build the SPIRITUAL temple to which Christ shall soon come the second time? Who was to prepare the way before His Second Coming?

“Remember, God does things in DUAL stages. As Zerubbabel built the first temple of MATERIAL stone, wood and other materials, he was a forerunner or type of one through whom Christ would raise up or build the SPIRITUAL TEMPLE—His Church of our time, prior to the Day of the Lord and Christ’s Second Coming. As John the Baptist prepared the way in the PHYSICAL wilderness of the Jordan River for the first coming of the HUMAN Jesus (both man and God), then coming to His MATERIAL temple, and to His PHYSICAL people Judah, ANNOUNCING the Kingdom of God to be set up more than 1,900 years later, SO God would use a human messenger in the SPIRITUAL wilderness of 20th-century religious confusion, to be a voice CRYING OUT the gospel of the KINGDOM OF GOD, about the SPIRITUAL CHRIST, coming in SUPREME POWER AND GLORY to His SPIRITUAL TEMPLE, to actually ESTABLISH that spiritual KINGDOM OF GOD.

“Brethren, HAS THAT BEEN DONE BY THIS CHURCH?

“Did God raise up a one-man LEADERSHIP to be used by Him in building this spiritual TEMPLE and in proclaiming after 1,900 years the true GOSPEL OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD IN ALL THE WORLD—to even go to kings and heads of nations (Revelation 10:11)—in bringing the Church back to the FAITH ONCE DELIVERED (Jude 3)?

“HAS THIS HAPPENED, IN YOUR DAYS, AND HAS GOD BROUGHT YOU INTO THIS PROPHETIC FULFILLMENT AS A PART OF IT?

“HAS ANYONE ELSE DONE IT?”

“Did Mr. Armstrong think one man would and did fulfill this prophecy? Absolutely! He speaks of “one,” “a human messenger,” “a voice,” “a one-man leadership”—and then ends by asking, “HAS ANYONE ELSE DONE IT?”

“Mr. Armstrong continued: “God has never removed a man called to a specific leadership or assignment or commission until his mission is COMPLETED.” Did Mr. Armstrong complete his mission? Did he finish “this house,” “restore all things” and “turn the hearts of the fathers”? He most certainly did!

“The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of THIS HOUSE; his hands shall also FINISH it; and you shall know that the LORD of hosts has sent me unto you” (Zechariah 4:9). “House” is a very common word in the Bible. In the Englishman’s Hebrew and Chaldee Concordance, where “house” is used, the scriptures cover 13 PAGES. The word “temple” in the same book covers only ONE FOURTH OF A PAGE. “Temple” is not used here—and “temple” is not nearly as common in the Bible as the word “house.”

“The word “house” can mean an “inner part”—or only a part of something greater. It’s a name given to human bodies as being frail and transitory (Job 4:19). The word is used as “tent” (Genesis 27:15; 33:17). It is used as the “house of the spider” (Job 8:14). It’s applied to wealth, property and all that belongs to a family. All uses of this word are very temporary (like a Church era). The word temple is used in a more permanent way or to indicate a very long period of time. For example, the word “temple” often applies to ALL SEVEN CHURCH ERAS. It also applies to ETERNAL LIFE.

“The subject is “this house” and IS IN THE CONTEXT OF THE SEVEN CHURCH ERAS (Zechariah 3:7-8; 4:2, 10; Revelation 1:20). If we put all the scriptures together, it could just as well be called “this era.” And Zerubbabel did finish it. Mr. Armstrong not only laid the foundation, as we often say today—HE BUILT THE WHOLE HOUSE. When he died, the PHILADELPHIA ERA WAS COMPLETED. He restored all things (Matthew 17:10-11). No more foundational doctrines need to be added to the house. ALL WE NEED TO DO IS WALK IN Mr. Armstrong’s FOOTSTEPS…Primarily, we just need to maintain the “house” and do God’s Work.”

So, Mr. Armstrong did lay the foundation of this house, the Philadelphia era of God’s Church, and also finished it. The Philadelphia era ended when he passed away on January 16, 1986. But he had completed building the ‘house.’ His task was to ‘restore all things’ to God’s Church, meaning the doctrines and other truths about God’s way of life Jesus Christ taught to the original apostles. No more doctrines would need to be added. There were many controversies raised by tares or infiltrators in the Church about doctrines along the way. But when Mr. Armstrong died all doctrines had been settled so that the Church now knows that we have all the truths concerning doctrines for God’s Church. The house has been completed. And since all doctrines have been restored, there is no need for another apostle to be sent in the end time to restore what has already been completely restored, and none is prophesied to come.

*4)  Mr. Armstrong’s Coming and Passing Away Were Prophesied*

There are two prophecies that pointed to Mr. Armstrong’s death, one in the Old Testament and one in the New Testament.

The first prophecy is Zechariah 4:9, which has already been explained. It states, “The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it; and you shall know that the Lord of hosts has sent me unto you.” When the task of finishing the house or restoring all the doctrines to the Church had been completed, Mr. Armstrong died.

Another prophecy that Mr. Armstrong’s death fulfilled is 2 Thessalonians 2:1-12 (NKJV):

“1 Now, brethren, concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our gathering together to Him, we ask you, 2 not to be soon shaken in mind or troubled, either by spirit or by word or by letter, as if from us, as though the day of Christ had come. 3 Let no one deceive you by any means; for that Day will not come unless the falling away comes first, and the man of sin is revealed, the son of perdition, 4 who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God or that is worshiped, so that he sits as God in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God. 5 Do you not remember that when I was still with you I told you these things? 6 And now you know what is restraining, that he may be revealed in his own time. 7 For the mystery of lawlessness [or iniquity] is already at work; only He who now restrains will do so until He is taken out of the way. 8 And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord will consume with the breath of His mouth and destroy with the brightness of His coming. 9 The coming of the lawless one is according to the working of Satan, with all power, signs, and lying wonders, 10 and with all unrighteous deception among those who perish, because they did not receive the love of the truth, that they might be saved. 11 And for this reason God will send them strong delusion, that they should believe the lie, 12 that they all may be condemned who did not believe the truth but had pleasure in unrighteousness.”

Here is how this prophecy was also about Mr. Armstrong’s death.

In these verses Paul was explaining to the Thessalonians to not give up their normal lives and just wait for the return of Jesus Christ. He explained that Jesus Christ will not return to earth until there will be a falling away from the faith, meaning God’s Church, for only God’s Church has the true faith. In addition, Jesus Christ will not return until the ‘man of sin’ who causes the falling away is revealed.

As most prophecies in the Bible are dual, this prophecy is also dual. Usually duality means that there has been a former fulfillment of prophecy in ancient times, and there will be another greater fulfillment in the time of the end. But there is also another duality that characterizes many prophecies. There is one fulfillment of such prophecies for physical Israel (America and Britain) in the world at large, and another fulfillment in God’s Church. This prophecy in 2 Thessalonians is one such prophecy with a fulfillment in the world and the Church.

The “man of sin to be revealed” mentioned here sits in the temple. Temple in prophecy means God’s Church, as well as the physical temple at Jerusalem. This means that ‘the man of sin’ in the end time will be in God’s Church, as well as another one in the world whom Jesus Christ will destroy at His coming. Revelation 19:20 describes this ‘man of sin’ in the world as the false prophet, whom Jesus Christ will destroy by having him thrown alive in the lake of fire.

This prophecy shows that “the man of sin” in the Church will actually cause the ‘falling away’ from the Church. And the ‘man of sin’ had to be revealed in the end-time. We have already seen the dramatic fulfillment of this prophecy in the Church. If Mr. Armstrong knew the beliefs Joseph W. Tkach Sr. held in secret, he would have never appointed him as pastor general to head the Church after his death. But the “mystery of iniquity” that was working with Joseph Tkach Sr., meaning those helping him, was so well hidden that most Church members and Mr. Armstrong had no clue about it. If he knew, he would not have appointed Joseph Tkach Sr. as pastor general and his successor in the Church.

But now read verses 7-8 again: “7 For the mystery of lawlessness [or iniquity] is already at work; only he who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way. 8 And then the lawless one will be revealed…”

Verse 7 says “only he who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way.” This means that the “mystery of iniquity” (or the Synagogue of Satan – Revelation 3:9) that was at work in the Church during Mr. Armstrong’s time was actually restrained by Mr. Armstrong. He had to put down 2-3 major rebellions in the Church and would not allow these tares or infiltrators to change any doctrines. He restrained their influence. Then verse 7 says that “he [meaning Mr. Armstrong] who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way.” Mr. Armstrong was taken out of the way by death. Then the “mystery of iniquity” perpetrated by the Synagogue of Satan within God’s Church under Joseph Tkach Sr’s stewardship began to work openly. Thus the ‘man of sin’ in the Church was revealed.

*5) A Prophet Gives or Interprets Prophecy*

Prophet by definition means one who utters divinely inspired revelations, or one who foretells future events. This means that a prophet is used by God to either give new prophecies, foretelling future events, or is given special understanding of prophecy.

But God warned in Revelation 22:18, “18 For I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds to these things, God will add to him the plagues that are written in this book; 19 and if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God shall take away his part from the Book of Life, from the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book.”

This means that all prophecy has already been recorded in the Bible. No new prophecies would be given. This means that a prophet in the end-time would be given special understanding of prophecies already given, and would not proclaim new prophecies.

Many self-proclaimed prophets and prophecy buffs try to interpret prophecy, but there are certain statements made about prophecy in the Bible that shed light on who understands it. When the Book of Revelation was being revealed to John the Apostle by an angel, and John fell down to worship the angel, here is what the angel told him in Revelation 19:10, “And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, see you do it not: I am your fellow-servant, and of your brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.”

This means that only those who have the testimony of Jesus Christ that they are His, or His representatives, have an understanding of prophecy.

Daniel the prophet was given major prophecies about the major ruling empires that will hold sway from his time till our time. However, he was informed by the angel revealing prophecies to him in Daniel 12:8-10, “8 Although I heard, I did not understand. Then I said, “My lord, what shall be the end of these things?” 9 And he said, “Go your way, Daniel, for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. 10 Many shall be purified, made white, and refined, but the wicked shall do wickedly; and none of the wicked shall understand, but the wise shall understand.”

This means that understanding of most of the prophecies given in the Bible was closed [sealed] till the end time, but that understanding would be given in the end-time to the one who had the testimony of Jesus that he is His representative.

Before Herbert W. Armstrong started preaching, nobody understood the meaning of various symbolic beasts with multiple horns and mysterious women mentioned in prophecies in the books of Daniel and Revelation. The meaning of these prophecies was first revealed to Herbert W. Armstrong. All of Christianity in the USA recognizes that the greatest contribution that Herbert Armstrong made was to provide an understanding of prophecy.

Even the timing of the understanding of prophecy was prophesied in Revelation 17:9-10 (NKJV), “9 “Here is the mind which has wisdom: The seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. 10 There are also seven kings. Five have fallen, one is, and the other has not yet come. And when he comes, he must continue a short time.”

The seven heads here represent the seven resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire, and a woman in prophecy is a Church. In this case the Church is the Roman Catholic Church. When understanding of these prophecies were revealed to Herbert W. Armstrong around 1935, the five resurrections of the Holy Roman Empire had already passed, the five that have fallen. At that time the sixth resurrection, that of the Hitler-Mussolini Axis had just come into existence, the ‘one is.’ The seventh is still to come, the ‘other has not yet come.’

Understanding of prophecy in the end-time was not revealed to an ordinary Jew. God sent a Jew, Herbert W. Armstrong, as a prophet in the spirit and power of Elijah as prophesied in Malachi 4:5-6 to reveal all the prophecies.

No man in his life and death can fulfill so many Bible prophecies and not be the man these prophecies mention. It is simply impossible for a man to fulfill all these prophecies by mere coincidence. Therefore, we can be certain that Mr. Armstrong was the prophesied Elijah and apostle to come who came and restored all truths to God’s Church in the form of major doctrines, prepared the way for Jesus Christ’s second coming, and gave an understanding of prophecy to the world.

**Other Prophecies Being Fulfilled Right Now**

*1) Messages During Time of Delay no Longer*

Not only have prophecies been fulfilled in the past, many other prophecies are being fulfilled right now in the present. Revelation 10:1-4 states, “And I saw still another mighty angel coming down from heaven…and he had a little book open in his hand…and cried with a loud voice, as when a lion roars. And when he cried out, seven thunders uttered their voices. Now when the seven thunders uttered their voices, I was about to write; but I heard a voice from heaven saying to me, “Seal up the things which the seven thunders uttered, and do not write them.”

Like other prophecies, this prophecy was also sealed till the time of the end. But in the end time all these prophecies have been understood by God’s true Church.

Since the book of Revelation is mainly about the very end-time and the Day of the Lord, which is the last one year of the Great Tribulation, this prophecy is for the end times as well. Since the Great Tribulation is a time of trouble for physical Israel (primarily America and British Commonwealth nations and the Jews) as well as spiritual Israel (which is God’s true Church), the prophecies in the book of Revelation would have to deal with both of them. John wrote the prophecies concerning physical nations of Israel and the world as the messages contained in the seven seals. But John was told not to write the message the seven thunders uttered. These messages could pertain only to spiritual Israel, the true Church of God. John did not write these messages because they were to be sealed till the time of the end. But these messages to God’s Church would then be revealed in the time of the end.

The warnings in Revelation for physical Israel, were issued because they would be committing gross sins by violating God’s laws. Similarly, the warning to God’s Church would be issued because members would fall away from the truth. This prophecy thus is about members of God’s Church being led astray by Satan’s agents who had infiltrated the Church. The seven thunders uttering their voice was a prophecy to warn the members of God’s Church to repent, get back on track, and put their hearts and souls into doing God’s work. Mr. Gerald Flurry, pastor general of the Philadelphia Church of God understood this prophecy first and wrote a book titled “Malachi’s Message” directed at members of the Church as a warning. That is the little book prophesied in Revelation 10:2. Mr. Flurry has been delivering that thundering message to God’s Church since December 1989. He continues to do that job even today. Thus this prophecy since the death of Mr. Armstrong has already been fulfilled.

*2) Prophecy to prophesy again already fulfilled*

Now notice the next part of the message that the mighty angel delivered to John in Revelation 10:5-6, “And the angel whom I saw standing on the sea and on the land lifted up his hand to heaven and swore by Him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and the things that are in it, the earth and the things that are in it, the sea and the things that are in it, that there should be delay no longer.”

The mighty angel said that after the message of the seven thunders was revealed and preached, there should be delay no longer. This means that after the warning to members of God’s Church to get back on track has been delivered, there is no delay any longer in the fulfillment of the first end time event, which is the world war between the German led global alliance against the USA/Britain/Israel alliance, pictured by the first four seals of Revelation 6 in which one fourth of mankind or more than 1.85 billion people will die. The mighty angel swore that by God. So there is indeed no delay any longer. We are without doubt in the very end of the end time.

Then just after giving the message to John that ‘there should be delay no longer’, the angel further told through John what the next events would be. He said, “8 And the voice which I heard from heaven spake unto me again, and said, Go and take the little book which is open in the hand of the angel which stands upon the sea and upon the earth. 9 And I went unto the angel, and said unto him, Give me the little book. And he said unto me, Take it, and eat it up; and it shall make thy belly bitter, but it shall be in thy mouth sweet as honey. 10 And I took the little book out of the angel's hand, and ate it up; and it was in my mouth sweet as honey: and as soon as I had eaten it, my belly was bitter. 11 And he said unto me, Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues [meaning in many languages], and kings.”

John was not the one to deliver those messages in verse 11 on prophecy about many peoples, nations and kings in all languages of the world. They were to be delivered near the very end of the end time. So John did not deliver that message.

But after the ‘little book’ was written by Mr. Flurry, and he had delivered its message and about 20 years had passed since the passing away of Mr. Armstrong on January 16, 1986, other very end of the end time messages about prophecy were to be delivered again by someone as stated in verse 11, “11 And he said unto me, Thou must prophesy again before many peoples, and nations, and tongues [meaning in many languages], and kings.”

These messages about prophecies concerning many peoples, nations and kings were to be delivered again, but now in many languages. Church of God has carried out its commission in about 5-7 languages of the world. But that is not many languages. These languages excluded the most populous nations of China, India, Japan, Russia and the Arabs.

Therefore, this prophecy is about another person than Mr. Flurry delivering these messages on prophecy in many languages. But before delivering those messages, this person must eat up the ‘little book’ and digest it, meaning must understand it thoroughly.

I began that work of delivering the messages about prophecy to the entire world on December 2, 2006 every Saturday morning at 9.00 a.m. USA Eastern Standard Time which is broadcast to every human being on earth in the language he or she understands. Being a lay member in God’s Church, I had no training in the ministry in God’s Church. Therefore, I had to train myself in understanding all prophecy. I literally read almost every book, booklet, magazine written by Mr. Flurry of the Philadelphia Church of God, the United Church of God, The Restored Church of God and the Living Church of God. I literally had eaten up and digested the ‘little book’ and more before I began to deliver my messages, in fulfillment of Revelation 10:8-10.

God’s Church does not have the resources to preach the messages to all the world in all languages. Most nations would not even allow the message to be preached. But Satan leads the global alliance led by Germany. They are impatient to get the third world war started because ultimately it means control of the world’s nations and their wealth for them. Initially to fulfill this prophecy, Satan and the demons chose to broadcast my messages to every human being in his or her own language. I simply read the messages in English and Satan rebroadcast them.

I completed delivering all the messages once on July 14, 2007 in fulfillment of the commission in Revelation 10:11. Then Satan and the demons stopped delivering my messages because their purpose in fulfilling that prophecy was served. After that God’s angels have been delivering my messages on a weekly basis. God says now there is no delay any longer in the fulfillment of the end time events. Satan, the demons, the Germans and their allies are now free to begin the third world war, pictured by the first four seals of Revelation 6, without any further delay. So we really are living in the very end of the end time. And the prophecy to prophesy again to the world in all languages of the world has already been dramatically fulfilled in a way no one could have ever imagined.

*3) Seventh Resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire*

As already mentioned, the Roman Empire was to be resurrected 10 times, the initial three resurrections being plucked up by the roots by the little horn in Daniel 7, which we have identified as the Pope of the Roman Church. The last seven resurrections would take place with the blessings of the Pope. The Roman Empire would then be called the Holy Roman Empire.

Six resurrections are already past. The seventh resurrection is a union of ten rulers ruling over ten territories or nations in Europe. We already see such a union in Europe, called the European Union. Thus, we see the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire already taking shape. But the final shape will take place only with the involvement of the false Church.

God prophesied the rise of the great false Church that would persecute the true saints, meaning members of God’s true Church. This is prophesied in Revelation 17:6, “6 And I saw the woman drunken with the blood of the saints, and with the blood of the martyrs of Jesus.”

Revelation 13:11 is also a prophecy about this spiritual leader that adds another characteristic of his leadership: “11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb [acting like Jesus Christ], and he spoke as a dragon” [or Satan]. A horn is a symbol for a king in prophecy. This religious leader wears two crowns. Only one religious leader on earth does that. The pope is the head of the Roman Church and also is the head of a state, the Vatican State, which sends and receives ambassadors like any state.

The rise of this great false Church was also prophesied through Daniel the prophet. Its leader is the little horn of Daniel 7:21, 25, “21 I beheld, and the same horn made war with the saints, and prevailed against them…24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings that shall arise: and another shall rise after them; and he shall be diverse from the first, and he shall subdue three kings. 25 And he shall speak great words against the Most High and shall wear out the saints of the most High, and think to change times and laws: and they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and the dividing of time.”

The Book of Revelation was given around 94 A.D. and Daniel’s prophecy in Daniel 7 was given around 550 BCE. This Church was still barely forming in 94 A.D. No one could have predicted the greatness the false Church of Rome would achieve in the future. But God foretold its rise and what it would do very accurately. It has persecuted to death all those opposed to its religion. This Church demands Sunday worship. But God’s true Church worships on the Sabbath day. That’s why the Roman Church has murdered hundreds of thousands or perhaps millions of true Church of God members over the past centuries. Thus, prophecies concerning the false Roman Church are still being fulfilled today, and it will be have a part in the seventh resurrection of the Holy Roman Empire.

The numerous prophecies fulfilled in the past, many prophecies given thousands of years ago still being fulfilled, and prophecies for our time having already been fulfilled or still being fulfilled before our eyes should convince any rational human being that the God of the Bible has provided ample evidence that He is the true Almighty God; and the only God. There is no other god. The holy books of all other religions have failed this test miserably and are the writings of men, or inspired by the devil himself to lead humanity astray and hide God’s true potential for humanity.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 12

**PROOF # 4 GOD PROTECTS UNDER ALL CIRCUMSTANCES**

When I was seeking proof for the existence of God, I had two criteria. The first was demonstration of God’s almighty power and total control over the earth, the universe and the affairs of mankind. I thought the best proof would be if God would foretell that He would do many great things and demonstrate that He can bring them all to pass precisely as He foretold. I found that proof in numerous Bible prophecies as already described.

I developed my second criterion for proof of the existence of an Almighty God by analyzing human life on earth. I realized that there was no security of life for a human being, even for powerful people. One could easily die in an accident, natural disaster, or be murdered. I had known examples of physically very powerful men being beaten to death by their enemies. It is possible for any of us to be killed by a strongman, a mob or even police even though we may be fully innocent. And then war can overtake anyone and kill that person. However, I thought that if an Almighty God exists, then He should be able to defend any of us who obey Him completely under all circumstances. Does such an Almighty God exist?

Then my research led to the most influential book in my life “*United States and Britain in Prophecy*” written by Herbert W. Armstrong. It is available free of charge at www.pcog.org, and even on the Internet. In that book, Mr. Armstrong described how God made incredible promises to Abraham, his son Isaac, grandson Jacob and great grandson Joseph and kept them through nearly 4,000 years of human history, fulfilling many intricate prophecies in the process as already described. While these men were living, God gave them protection to fulfill His promises. They faced draughts, famines, had to fight powerful empires (in the case of Abraham), could have been killed by kings or hunted down by their enemies and killed. But God protected them through all the perils throughout their lives and made sure that their descendants survived so that God could fulfill His promises to them. Then there are the examples of David, Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. I found the proof of an Almighty God I was looking for and gave up every other religion and converted to the kind of Christianity taught by Herbert W. Armstrong from the Bible, which is very different from the Christianity taught and practiced by mainstream Christian denominations such as Catholicism and Protestantism.

However, “Jesus Christ [is] the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.” (Hebrews 13:8). God also says, “For I am the Lord, I do not change,” (Malachi 3:6). God Who worked miracles for Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Moses, David, Daniel and the prophets, works miracles today also to protect those who put their trust in Him and strive to obey Him.

Since my conversion to Christianity, God has provided ample demonstration of His almighty power numerous times in my life, exactly as I reasoned He would if I made a full commitment to serve Him only. German masqueraders and their allies in India and the USA have made hundreds if not thousands of attempts on my life since the age of ten in every possible way. These attempts have included actual numerous poisonings; attempts to have me shot dead numerous times, torn apart by dogs, large males getting involved in rough and tumble wrestling near me to entangle me in the ‘fight’ and then hurt me. One even tried to break my back so that I would be paralyzed for life. Doctors and nurses have tried to infect me with the HIV virus or use high energy X-rays to damage my heart or kill me. They have had big rigs try to run me over on the highway while traveling in my car or run me off the road with their cars. They have tried to run me over while taking a walk. When one of them tried, his car actually ended up being driven fast in reverse to his utter astonishment. They even tried to have me buried alive twice, and tried to blow me up using explosives in a car, the favorite method of Muslims. I have survived all these attempts over the past 57 years. Thus, God has demonstrated His ability to protect those who obey Him wholeheartedly even today.

The attempts on my life continue to be made even now, almost daily, at every possible opportunity. God Almighty still continues to protect me. Of course, thousands of those who made these attempts, and those who ordered them know the truth of these statements. People who claimed that they genuinely made the attempts have been financially rewarded because those who rewarded them knew them to be true. The ones paying the rewards have included owners of the largest Indian Information Technology firms who have benefited from collaboration with German masqueraders in the USA.

I came to learn of the attempts being made on my life around 2,000 A.D. But God had been protecting me for nearly forty years before that though I never knew about these attempts. Every year, God’s Church attends the Annual festival called the Feast of Tabernacles, which is held at various locations around the world. I went to the Feast of Tabernacles in Germany in 1993 and spent 12 days there. Attempts were made on my life in Germany in different ways. But God Almighty protected me through all of them, over 12 days. I came back alive to the USA.

Then in 2,000 - 2,001 God intervened in the USA and perhaps also in British Commonwealth nations and in India in a mighty way to save millions of lives. In 2000 - 2001, Satan gave German masqueraders and their allies in India the signal to murder most Information Technology people, top generals, business leaders and politicians in America, British Commonwealth nations, and among the Sikhs by poisoning them in restaurants or other places, or by any other means possible. They were also ordered to murder their Israelite [meaning American, British, Jewish, Irish, French, Scandinavian, Swiss or Benelux countries’] spouses and their own children born with Israelite spouses. Literally millions of people could have been murdered. The Germans, the German masqueraders and their Indian allies know very well that Satan’s order was carried out. But God intervened and NONE of the attempts succeeded over a period of WEEKS AND MONTHS. God intervened in the lives of millions of individuals over a period of many months. That is mass intervention of which the Germans, German masqueraders and their Indian allies have proof.

Of course, the Germans inquired from Satan why the attempts were not succeeding. The answer given to them was that God was preventing them from succeeding because I had been praying for God’s intervention. I had anticipated this possibility a few months before the order was given realizing that many people in America had already been murdered by ‘food poisoning’ in restaurants in the USA, and how easy it would be to mass murder people. As a result, I had been beseeching God to intervene to prevent this from happening if an attempt was made. God intervened.

Thus the fourth proof that God exists is that He still works miracles and demonstrates that He is Almighty and can override the actions of Satan, any demons and any human beings.

Germans and German masqueraders, including those who have infiltrated God’s Church believe that Satan is more powerful than the God of the Bible as already described in their gnostic beliefs. But we have seen proof here that Satan is completely under the control of the God of the Bible, who can annul any of Satan’s actions, or prevent his orders from being carried out.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 13

**PROOF # 5 EXISTENCE OF THE SPIRIT WORLD**

Atheists, agnostics, believers in religions not based on a belief in God generally believe that there are no other intelligent beings except human beings. They do not believe in the existence of one Supreme God, any other gods, and believe that angels, Satan and the demons are a myth.

Some proponents of atheism are Germans. But like their mentor, Satan the devil, they are liars engaged in diabolically trying to deceive others like their mentor. They know and believe that Satan the devil and demons exist. They have shared that information with their allies the Chinese and Indians.

As I have discussed in proof # 4, the murder attempts were ordered by Satan. He communicates with the Germans. They know Satan and the demons exist. But since their attempts were counteracted by another power which demonstrated that He is superior to Satan, that power is called God in the Bible. So both God and His angels also exist, because He works through angels loyal to Him on earth.

The existence of the spirit world is also demonstrated daily and weekly in other ways.

Satan and his demons are powerful beings, also capable of working certain miracles. He and the demons loyal to him are able to broadcast my thoughts (though I know, true to their nature, they mix lies with them in order to slander me and deceive people) to every human being who wants to listen in. All any person has to do is to tune his mind to listen and he or she will be able to listen to what Satan and the demons are broadcasting as my thoughts. This miracle is performed 24 hours a day continuously day in and day out. Try it and get the proof yourself anytime.

In 2005, someone suggested that I start a blog. He did not specify the kind of blog I should start. Then the idea came to me to start a blog to contribute to fulfilling the commission God has given His end-time Church to preach the good news of the soon coming return of Jesus Christ to earth to establish the Kingdom of God.

I made the first posting to my blog on September 26, 2006. But then an idea came to me to take advantage of the UNPRECEDENTED EVENT of which I had been a part of since 2001. Satan and the demons had started broadcasting my thoughts to all the world at the request of the Germans so that they could have access to my ideas on business strategy and economic development. I decided to prepare weekly messages and read them out aloud. Since Satan and the demons were broadcasting my thoughts, they would have to broadcast my weekly messages as well. On December 2, 2006 I delivered my first message. I was pleasantly surprised to learn that my message had been broadcast. Later I learnt that my messages were being broadcast so that every human being could hear them in his or her own language. This is the SECOND UNPRECEDENTED EVENT in which I have had a part. No one's messages had ever been previously broadcast in the history of mankind to every human being on earth in his or her own language.

God's commission to His Church in the end of the end time that we now live in is stated in Revelation 10:11"...You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, tongues, and kings." With my message of July 14, 2007, I had fulfilled all parts of this commission, because I had covered all prophecies. Then Satan and the demons stopped broadcasting my messages. I thought I should stop broadcasting further messages, but the then President of the United Church of God indicated that I should continue my messages. So I continued them. But since the week after that, God's angels have continued to broadcast my weekly messages. I believe that Satan made that clear to the Germans that they had stopped broadcasting my messages, and that it was God’s loyal angels who were now broadcasting my messages.

I broadcast my messages at 9.00 AM, USA Eastern Standard Time every Saturday. I read them out in English. But anyone can hear them by just tuning in one’s mind to hear and will hear them in his or her own language. Prove it to yourself.

These two unprecedented events provide daily and weekly proof of the existence of a spirit world beyond our human world. Germans know of the existence of the spirit world, particularly Satan and the demons and are guided by them. Satan has also let them know of the existence of other Gods. We who believe in the Bible know these other Gods as God the Father and Jesus Christ as the Gods of the Bible. We also learn from the Bible the existence of other spirit beings which the Bible identifies as angels. The two unprecedented events provide proof of their existence.

A THIRD UNPRECEDENTED EVENT, a miracle, takes place in my life the frequency of which I do not know. Since only I and a few others know of the occurrence of this event, it does not constitute proof of the existence of God, but it demonstrates that the God of the Bible is supreme.

German masqueraders have been using threats delivered electronically to force people to do things against their will. Since they have made so many attempts on my life, there is no doubt in my mind that they have tried to deliver threats to me electronically. They successfully deliver those threats to others without any problems. But never in my life have I even heard any such threat even once. God and His angels have built some sort of a hedge around me to completely block such threats, which still continue to be blocked. Only the German masqueraders who try to deliver these threats know of this ongoing miracle performed by God and His angels. This is proof for the Germans and German masqueraders of the existence of the God of the Bible, who is Supreme and is also proof that He is much more powerful than Satan.

**One Supreme God vs Many gods**

There are three monotheistic religions in the world: Christianity, Judaism and Islam. The other theistic religions, Hinduism and Sikhism believe in the existence of multiple gods, though Sikhism believes that the one Supreme God has created all the other gods and rules over them all. Germans too believe in multiple gods based on the gnostic myths of creation. What is the truth?

The main Hindu scriptures, the Mahabharata, The Bhagavad Gita and the Ramayana talk of many gods. Sikhism has taken the concept of multiple god from Hinduism and imposed the idea of one supreme God over them all. The idea of one Supreme God was taken from Islam.

Islam is truly the only religion that talks of one supreme God Allah. The Old Testament of the Bible, which constitutes the Jewish scriptures actually identifies two God Beings, whereas Christianity also identifies two God Beings, God the Father, and Jesus Christ the Son Who was also the God of the Old Testament.

**Two Gods Revealed in the Old Testament**

The book of Genesis records how God created everything. Before creating man God states in Genesis 1:26, “26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness:”

Why did God use the plural expressions ‘Us’ and ‘Our” in this verse? And the word translated God throughout Genesis 1 is the plural noun Elohim which denotes more than one God (referring to the true God) or god (referring to other gods than the true God, such as idols). The translators also felt that the appropriate translation here should be the plural expressions ‘Us’ and ‘Our.’

This points to the likelihood of two or more Beings as true Gods.

The singular form of Elohim is Eloah which means “Mighty One”. So Elohim means “Mighty Ones.” Elohim was used in Genesis 1:26. The same word is used in Genesis 3:22 when Adam and Eve ate of the forbidden fruit, "Behold, the man has become like one of Us, to know good and evil". Here again the word ‘Us’ is used indicating two God Beings.

At another critical time in man’s history, the time of Noah’s Flood, both God Beings were involved in making the decision jointly.

Genesis 6:5-8 states, “5 Then the Lord saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every intent of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. 6 And the Lord was sorry that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart. 7 So the Lord said, "I will destroy man whom I have created from the face of the earth, both man and beast, creeping thing and birds of the air, for I am sorry that I have made them." 8 But Noah found grace in the eyes of the Lord. This is the genealogy of Noah. Noah was a just man, perfect in his generations. Noah walked with God.”

The word used for Lord and God is YHWH here meaning the Word who later became Jesus Christ. Thus this is the God Being YHWH making these observations. But then the word Elohim is used in verses 11-13 which are translated God.

Genesis 6:11-13, “11 The earth also was corrupt before God, and the earth was filled with violence. 12 So God looked upon the earth, and indeed it was corrupt; for all flesh had corrupted their way on the earth. 13 And God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them; and behold, I will destroy them with the earth.”

The Lord (YHWH) had made the observations that the earth had become corrupt and that Noah walked with God. But now both God Beings [Elohim] are involved in the decision to destroy the world in a global Flood and save Noah. Here God the Father confirms the decision YHWH had made.

Later there was another critical time in man’s history when both God Beings were involved in making a decision jointly. This occurred when mankind built a tower in rebellion against God. This is stated in Genesis 11:5-7 (NKJV),” 5 But the Lord came down to see the city and the tower which the sons of men had built. 6 And the Lord said, "Indeed the people are one and they all have one language, and this is what they begin to do; now nothing that they propose to do will be withheld from them. 7 Come, let Us go down and there confuse their language, that they may not understand one another's speech."

Here the statements are being made by the Word [YHWH], translated Lord, but then in verse 7 the word “Us” is used again indicating that the Father was also involved in making the decision to confuse the language of mankind. These examples illustrate the perfect unity that exists between the two divine Beings in making decisions.

Other Old Testament prophets also indicated there are two God Beings.

King David was a prophet (Acts 2:30) who was inspired by God’s holy spirit. He declared in 2 Samuel 23:2, “2 The Spirit of the Lord spoke by me, and his word was in my tongue.” David revealed the existence of two God Beings in the psalms.

He writes in Psalm 110:1, “1 The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool.”

Here David is declaring the existence of two Lords. Actually this was a prophetic vision David saw which showed the Lord, that is God the Father saying to David’s Lord [the future Jesus Christ] to sit at His [Father’s] right hand until He makes His [Jesus’] enemies His footstool.

This prophecy was fulfilled after Jesus’ sacrifice, Who now sits at the Father’s right hand. Peter the apostle identified the two Lords in Acts 2:32-36, “32 This Jesus has God raised up, whereof we all are witnesses. 33 Therefore being by the right hand of God exalted…34 For David is not ascended into the heavens: but he says himself, The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou on my right hand, 35 Until I make your foes your footstool. 36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God has made that same Jesus, whom you have crucified, both Lord and Christ.”

Thus Acts 2 and Psalm 110 together make it clear that there are two Lords, God the Father and Jesus Christ as His son.

David also describes two God beings prophetically in Psalm 2, as a Father and a Son while talking about God's kingdom. Psalm 2:7-12 (NKJV): "I will declare the decree; The Lord has said to Me, 'You are My Son, today I have begotten You. Ask of Me, and I will give you the nations for your inheritance, and the ends of the earth for your possession…Now therefore, be wise, O kings; be instructed, you judges of the earth.  Serve the Lord with fear, and rejoice with trembling. Kiss the Son, lest He be angry, and you perish in the way, when His wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are they who put their trust in Him."

People can be blessed only if they put their trust in God. Therefore, the Son being talked about here is also God, and the one talking about the Son obviously is God. God is prophetically declaring that He would beget a Son who will receive the nations for His inheritance. So two God Beings are being discussed in this psalm as well.

Not only to David the prophet but the existence of two God Beings was also revealed to Daniel the prophet in a vision. He writes in Daniel 7:13-14, “13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they [the angelic host] brought him [the Son of Man] near before him [the Ancient of Days]. 14 And there was given him [the Son of Man] dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.”

In the New Testament John the apostle discussed two God Beings in John 1:1, “1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.”

How do we decide which religion is telling us the truth? The only real claim of multiple Gods comes from Hinduism and the Germans. Here is how I analyzed this question.

Astronomy has showed us evidence of battered planets in our solar system and the existence of the asteroid and Kuiper belts which point to a cosmic war that took place in the distant past, perhaps between gods. To me that seemed to point to the existence of multiple gods. And yet, today we see perfect control in our solar system where all the planets continue in their precise ‘appointed’ orbits, governed by definite laws. It requires supreme intellect and power to make such laws and sustain them. That is evidence for the existence of a single, supreme Creator God, in perfect control of the universe.

I reasoned that if multiple gods rule the earth, then we would expect humans to be fighting each other, which is what we see on earth today. This points to the existence of multiple gods ruling the earth.

The only real contenders for the existence of multiple gods were the Hinduism scriptures and German gnostic myths. The answer to the questions lies in the credibility of the scriptures. The criterion that would provide the proof I sought was that the God portrayed in the scriptures predicted many things and has the power to make them all come true under all circumstances, precisely as predicted. As already discussed at length, using that criterion, only the Bible meets that test. Thus the idea of multiple gods as described in Hinduism’s scriptures are figments of the imagination of human beings, or even worse, Satan inspired lies and fibs.

Also, some of the Hindu gods have been identified earlier as pre-Flood humans such as Lamech (identified as the Hindu god Indra), Jabal, Jubal and Naamah (identified as the Hindu goddess Kaali Maa), and post-Flood humans such as Cush (identified as Manu of the Hindus), Nimrod (identified as Krishna of the Hindus) and Semiramis who had deified themselves as gods. Rama of the Hindus is identified in the Bible as Raamah, the son of Cush and half-brother of Nimrod.

Here is one of the numerous fibs told in the Hindu scriptures as already illustrated with an example, which is another reason to reject the idea of multiple gods of Hinduism.   There is no reason to put faith in such lies. It stands to reason that the multiple gods talked about only in the Hindu scriptures are also fibs for which not a shred of evidence exists.

The Bible also provides the answers of the multiple gods of the German gnostic creation myths. These myths talk about the Creator God of the Bible as an inferior god. That would correspond to Jesus Christ in the Bible. According to these myths, the ultimate divine being is completely removed from this world, in that he is absolutely spirit – with no material aspects or qualities. That would be God the Father. So the Germans think that the contest for control of the earth is between Jesus Christ and Satan, and they believe Satan is more powerful than Jesus Christ.

Since we have proved through prophecy that the Bible is the true word of God, and that the God of the Bible is the supreme God, and that Satan is a mere creation of the God of the Bible, we can trust what the Bible says rather than believe what the German gnostic myths state. The Bible reveals the true nature of Satan the devil in the following verses:

John 8:44, “You are of your father the devil, and the desires of your father you want to do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and does not stand in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own resources, for he is a liar and the father of it.”

Revelation 12:9, “9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceives the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.” Satan is identified as one who deceives the whole world.

I Peter 5:8, “Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walks about, seeking whom he may devour.”

Satan is identified as a liar, there is no truth in him and he deceives the whole world. His purpose is to devour anyone he can by deception. That means turn that person away from the true God so that he or she does not qualify for the free gift of eternal life from the almighty Creator God. Since Satan is a liar, there is no reason to believe his lies told in the German and gnostic creation myths.

Germans believe that Satan is more powerful than Jesus Christ, the God of the Old Testament. I have already provided proof why that is a lie. Satan cannot prophesy and bring his prophecies to pass. God of the Bible can. God also demonstrated His superiority over Satan by annulling his orders to murder Americans, Britons and Sikhs by supernaturally protecting them.

The Bible also reveals who Satan really is. He was created as one of the three most powerful angels named Lucifer. But he convinced one-third of all the angels put under his authority on earth to rebel against God in an attempt to take over the throne of the universe from Him. Obviously, a created being cannot be more powerful than his creator. Lucifer was defeated in his rebellion and blasted back to earth with the angels who rebelled with him. He was renamed Satan. That’s how Satan became the adversary of God and the angels with him became demons.

The evidence of destruction we see in the cosmos is the result of that rebellion. A cosmic war did occur before man’s creation and Satan lost that war.

But Satan does masquerade around as the god of this world as 2 Corinthians 3-4 shows, “3 But if our gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost: 4 In whom the god of this world [meaning Satan] has blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.”

Thus we can conclude that the multiple gods of Hinduism do not exist. There are also no multiple universes talked about in the Hindu scriptures, and borrowed by Sikhism. The German gnostic creation myths are also lies of Satan the devil. Yes there are two Gods as the Bible reveals. But the word God in the Bible is a family name. The potential of every human being is to be born as an immortal son or daughter of God. A son of God is a God. The God of the Bible is basically expanding His family through human beings. But at present, there are only two God Beings in that family: God the Father and Jesus Christ.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 14

**WHY DOESN’T GOD SHOW HIMSELF**

Many don’t believe in God because they cannot see Him. They say they’ll believe in Him when they see Him. A very relevant question, therefore is, “Why doesn’t God show Himself?”

A question for those who say they’ll believe in God when they see Him is, “In what form would you like to see God to make you believe?” There are two possibilities: one possibility is to see God as He really is; and the second, to see Him in human form. In any other form we will simply not believe He is God. If He came to us in human form, then what would make us believe He is really God?

If we were to see God in His true spirit form, we would not survive. That should be easy to understand. We can barely look at the sun at such a long distance. Any closer to the sun, we would perish. God who created the sun surely is brighter than that and we would not be able to survive in His presence.

In fact, Moses actually made this request from God. Here is God’s answer to him in Exodus 33:18-23, “18 And he [Moses] said, “Please, show me Your glory.” 19 Then He said, “I will make all My goodness pass before you, and I will proclaim the name of the Lord before you. I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.” 20 But He said, “You cannot see My face; for no man shall see Me, and live.” 21 And the Lord said, “Here is a place by Me, and you shall stand on the rock. 22 So it shall be, while My glory passes by, that I will put you in the cleft of the rock, and will cover you with My hand while I pass by. 23 Then I will take away My hand, and you shall see My back; but My face shall not be seen.”

The God of the Old Testament did come in human form as Jesus Christ. Jews and Gentiles alike murdered Him and did not believe He was the God of the Old Testament who had created all the angelic world including Satan and the demons, the material universe, humanity and all creatures on earth. If He came to earth in human form today, humanity will still not believe He is God and will laugh Him to scorn and hound Him out of their neighborhoods.

Before coming as Jesus Christ, the God of the Old Testament did interact with many human beings in the Old Testament. The humans who interacted with him wrote the account which is preserved for us in the pages of the Bible.

God first interacted with Adam after creating him. Adam knew He was God the Creator because he saw God in the act of creation when He planted the Garden in Eden as stated in Genesis 2:7-9, “7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. 8 And the Lord God planted a garden eastward in Eden; and there he put the man whom he had formed. 9 And out of the ground made the Lord God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden, and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.”

Later God interacted with Adam and Eve and gave them instructions which they chose to disobey. As a result they were removed from the Garden of Eden. He then interacted with Cain and Abel when they brought their offering and told Cain that if he worked on ruling his sins his sacrifice would be accepted. Instead of accepting God’s advice humbly, Cain became angry and murdered his righteous brother Abel.

Then God set a boundary marker between Cain and Adam’s other children to live separately to avoid further bloodshed. But Cain 16…went out from the presence of the Lord, and dwelt in the land of Nod, on the east of Eden.” He simply wanted to have nothing more to do with God and went away from God’s presence.

God then interacted with Enoch and later extensively with Noah, sharing His plan with him to drown all of humanity in a Flood because of the multiplying evils and violence, but giving detailed instructions to him on how to make an ark to save himself and his family. God Himself actually sealed the ark shut after Noah and his family entered it with the animals.

After Noah God talked with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob and made incredible promises to them concerning their descendants. The reason God interacted with Noah, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob was that they were obedient to Him, did not question His instructions and obeyed Him without question in whatever He required of them. In their thoughts and actions they acknowledged Him as sovereign over their lives.

After Noah, God not only interacted with Abraham and His descendants, He also interacted with other nations. During the early days of Abraham in the land of Canaan, God of the Old Testament had established the city of Salem, in the location of Jerusalem, and reigned there as the Most High God’s High Priest and King of Salem, Melchizedek. The Canaanites lived in the land at that time. But God could not continue reigning there because of the sins of the Canaanites. God would then go on to establish the nation of Israel as His people through Abraham and His descendants. To learn the identity of Melchizedek as the God of the Old Testament, read the UCG booklet *“Who is God?”* at the following link: https://www.ucg.org/bible-study-tools/booklets/who-is-god/a-mystery-solved-the-identity-of-melchizedek.

Next God dealt with Moses and the Israelites to win them their freedom from slavery to the Egyptians. God spoke with Moses face to face as described in Exodus 33:9-10, “9 And it came to pass, as Moses entered into the tabernacle, the cloudy pillar descended, and stood at the door of the tabernacle, and the Lord talked with Moses. 10 And all the people saw the cloudy pillar stand at the tabernacle door: and all the people rose up and worshipped, every man in his tent door. 11 And the Lord spake unto Moses face to face, as a man speaks unto his friend.”

Human beings always have doubts whether God in fact spoke to a prophet or not. God understood that. To convince the Israelites that He spoke with Moses, He decided to speak the Ten Commandments directly to the people. But before speaking the Ten Commandments, God told Moses in Exodus 19:9, “9 And the Lord said to Moses, “Behold, I come to you in the thick cloud, that the people may hear when I speak with you, and believe you forever. So Moses told the words of the people to the Lord…

16 Then it came to pass on the third day, in the morning, that there were thunderings and lightnings, and a thick cloud on the mountain; and the sound of the trumpet was very loud, so that all the people who were in the camp trembled. 17 And Moses brought the people out of the camp to meet with God, and they stood at the foot of the mountain. 18 Now Mount Sinai was completely in smoke, because the Lord descended upon it in fire. Its smoke ascended like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain quaked greatly. 19 And when the blast of the trumpet sounded long and became louder and louder, Moses spoke, and God answered him by voice.”

To convince the people that God was in fact speaking through Moses and that Moses was not making everything up, God gave them this demonstration. Despite this proof, later, people still rebelled against Moses in the rebellion of Korah, Dathan and Abiram (Numbers 16:1-49).

God then spoke the Ten Commandments to all the Israelites. Just as God had a direct relationship with Moses, He wanted to establish a direct relationship with the Israelites. But the reaction of the people is mentioned in Exodus 20:18-19, “18 And all the people saw the thunderings, and the lightnings, and the noise of the trumpet, and the mountain smoking: and when the people saw it, they removed, and stood afar off. 19 And they said unto Moses, you speak with us, and we will hear: but let not God speak with us, lest we die.”

From then on God honored the Israelites request and spoke only through His prophet Moses. Subsequently also God spoke to the Israelites only through prophets and not directly. That is the reason why God does not show Himself to people face to face.

Let’s now review the history of God dealing with human beings directly. Adam and Eve disobeyed God. Their firstborn son became a murderer and deliberately went away from  the presence of God. God dealt with ancient Israel face to face. They begged that God not talk to them directly and that He deal with them through prophets. They rebelled against His prophet Moses, despite having seen all the miracles in Egypt and during their wanderings in the wilderness for 40 years, when God fed them miraculously with manna, and their shoes and clothes did not wear out for the entire 40 years. They rebelled against God’s law. When God warned them through prophets, they cruelly murdered most of the prophets. When the God of the Old Testament Himself came to earth as the man Jesus Christ, they witnessed His numerous miracles and healings. These witnesses still shouted for Him to be crucified and had Him put to death.

But there have been exceptions to the general rule: men like Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Job, Moses and the prophets were completely obedient to God and did not question His instructions at any time or disobey them. These men were able to have a worshipful relationship with their Creator God Who was pleased to deal with them.

The attitude of mankind towards God has not changed at all even today. They don’t want Him in their lives, because the only way He will come into the lives of anyone is if he or she is willing to diligently study God’s word to learn His will and way of life and strive wholeheartedly to obey Him, and build a close relationship with Him through fasting, meditation and prayer.

God describes humanity’s general attitude towards Him as hostile. He says in Jeremiah 17:9-10, “The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked; Who can know it? 10 I, the Lord, search the heart, test the mind, Even to give every man according to his ways, according to the fruit of his doings.”

Romans 8:5-7, “5 For those who live according to the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the Spirit, the things of the Spirit. 6 For to be carnally minded is death, but to be spiritually minded is life and peace. 7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God; for it is not subject to the law of God, nor indeed can be.”

We have seen that the so-called intellectuals, proponents of the theory of evolution who are mostly German masqueraders, not only deliberately do not want to retain God in their knowledge, but also engage in every kind of diabolical deception and tactic to deceive the rest of mankind to turn humanity away from God.

Paul the apostle describes their attitudes in Romans 1:18-22 (NLT), “18 But God shows his anger from heaven against all sinful, wicked people who suppress the truth by their wickedness [that’s the German masqueraders and proponents of the theory of evolution for you.] 19 They know the truth about God because he has made it obvious to them.  [Yes, these scientists see God’s marvelous creation and cannot deny that it has been designed and created by a Supreme Intelligent Designer and Creator]. 20 For ever since the world was created, people have seen the earth and sky. Through everything God made, they can clearly see his invisible qualities—his eternal power and divine nature. So they have no excuse for not knowing God.” 21 Yes, they knew God, but they wouldn’t worship him as God or even give him thanks. And they began to think up foolish ideas of what God was like. As a result, their minds became dark and confused.  22 Claiming to be wise, they instead became utter fools.”

God says that His creation points to Him as the Creator God. Honest men and women can come to the right conclusion by observing creation. However, men know the truth but are deliberately engaged in denying it through wickedness of diabolical deception and vain ‘intellectual’ philosophies. They do not want to worship God or obey Him. And what is their motive? Romans 1:28 (NLT), “28 Since they thought it foolish to acknowledge God, he abandoned them to their foolish thinking and let them do things that should never be done.”

Such people do not want to acknowledge God because they want to do whatever they wish to do, and live their lives the they want to. So God has abandoned them to their own ways. The result is described in verses 29-32, “29 Their lives became full of every kind of wickedness, sin, greed, hate, envy, murder, quarreling, deception, malicious behavior, and gossip. 30 They are backstabbers, haters of God, insolent, proud, and boastful. They invent new ways of sinning, and they disobey their parents. 31 They refuse to understand, break their promises, are heartless, and have no mercy. 32 They know God’s justice requires that those who do these things deserve to die, yet they do them anyway. Worse yet, they encourage others to do them, too.”

God does not leave human beings any excuse to fail to see His hand in His creation. Speaking through Isaiah the prophet God says in Isaiah 40:25-28 (New Living Translation), “25 “To whom will you compare me? Who is my equal?” asks the Holy One. 26 Look up into the heavens. Who created all the stars? He brings them out like an army, one after another, calling each by its name. Because of his great power and incomparable strength, not a single one is missing…28 Have you never heard? Have you never understood? The Lord is the everlasting God, the Creator of all the earth. He never grows weak or weary. No one can measure the depths of his understanding.”

**Who Created God**

When one talks to an atheist or evolutionist, they inevitably ask, “If God created the universe, then who created God?” Probably every human being has pondered that question and given up trying to find the answer because our minds cannot comprehend anything without a beginning, a Being Who has always existed. As we think about this question, we reach a dead end.

The answer is that there has to be a First Cause, a Primal Source of life. All this has to stop somewhere. If God created everything, there has to be one supreme God Who started the creation process in motion. NOTHING brought that God into being. He has always existed.

This question has been asked for thousands of years and the Almighty God of the Bible anticipated it question and answered it through Isaiah the prophet more than 2,700 years ago in Isaiah 43:10, “Before Me there was no God formed, nor shall there be after Me.”

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 15

**PREPARE TO MEET THE TRUE GOD**

Even though God does not show Himself face to face to human beings, that does not mean He has abandoned humanity. He has a great plan to bring humanity to Himself and develop a personal relationship with each and every human being who wants to.

As already described, when Adam and Eve chose to disobey God and decided to make their own decisions, God removed them from the Garden of Eden and told them to go and develop their own societies. He allotted humanity 6,000 years for this experience. That way was symbolized by the ‘tree of the knowledge of good and evil.’ The way humanity would develop would be a mixture of good and evil. Which is what we find in all the world’s religions, some more evil than others with some good mixed in.

But God has a plan of salvation for all of mankind. He has a plan to give every human being ever born one chance to qualify for salvation. And salvation is qualifying to receive eternal life as a free gift from God and become His literal sons and daughters. As God’s literal sons and daughters, we will see God face to face as He is, in His glorified spirit state, because we too will be spirit beings, and work with Him for eternity. We will be gods, as a son of God is a god. That state of affairs is described in Revelation 21:3-5, “3 And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. 4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away. 5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful.”

The plan of salvation is pictured in the seven annual holy days described in the Bible in Leviticus 23. To get a full understanding of that plan, I recommend reading the following booklets published by the United Church of God, available free of charge at the Church’s website www.ucg.org. The booklets are titled:

1.  *God’s Holy Day Plan: The Promise of Hope for All Mankind*,
2.  *The Road to Eternal Life*

Briefly, here is God’s plan for salvation of mankind as pictured by the seventh day Sabbath, and God’s seven annual holy days.

The seven day week pictures the duration of God’s plan for salvation, with each day picturing 1,000 years. Humans work the first six days of the week. Then comes the seventh day rest. To parallel this, God has allotted 6,000 years for humans to choose to live the way they want, and experience the pain, suffering, anguish mixed with some joys, and then ultimately death. Those 6,000 years are nearly ending. After that God will send Jesus Christ to set up His Kingdom Who will then govern all nations. All of humanity will be taught God’s way of life, and experience justice, peace, abundance, excellent health with supernatural healing if necessary, happiness and joy.

The process of offering a chance for salvation for every human being is termed “God’s calling’ in the Bible. Every human being is not being called today to offer him or her salvation. The truth is that only a very few are being called today. Calling of different people at different times to receive their chance for salvation is depicted in God’s seven annual holy days.

God took the three harvest seasons in the biblical land of Israel to picture how and in what numbers He will spiritually harvest human beings for eternal life in His Kingdom.

In Israel, there are three harvest seasons: the first harvest season is the early-spring harvest, second the late-spring harvest and the third the early-autumn harvest season. The spring harvest seasons are the seasons of the smaller harvest, and the early-autumn harvest season is the time of the greater harvest. God's plan of salvation for mankind is an exact parallel of these harvests. First comes the smaller harvest of souls for God's kingdom during the first 6.000 years of man’s history; then comes the greater harvest of souls to eternal life in the 1,000 year reign of Jesus Christ in God’s Kingdom.

Let us briefly look at what all the seven annual holy days picture in God's master plan for salvation of mankind.

**1) The Passover**

Two of God's festivals: the Passover and the Days of Unleavened Bread are celebrated during the first harvest season, the early spring harvest season, in March-April in our modern calendars.

The Passover for the ancient Israelites was an annual reminder that God spared or passed over the firstborn of Israelite slaves, when He slew all the firstborn of Egypt at the time of the Exodus. They were spared because they had put the blood of a sacrificed lamb on their doorposts.

The sacrifice of the lambs without blemish foreshadowed the sacrifice of the sinless Jesus Christ as the Lamb of God without blemish, for the sins of mankind. Every human being has sinned and come short of the glory of God as stated in Romans 3:23.  As a result all of us have earned the death penalty, as Romans 6:23 says, “23 …the wages of sin is death.” Jesus as our Creator sacrificed his life to pay the death penalty on behalf of each and every human being so that our sins could be forgiven. That is what the Passover pictures for the Christian.

**2) Feast of Unleavened Bread**

The second feast during the early spring harvest season is the Feast of Unleavened Bread, immediately following the Passover. During this feast, God commands His people to put leaven (or yeast) out of their homes for seven days (Exodus 12:19, I Corinthians 5:7-8). Leaven symbolizes sin. Therefore, this festival teaches and reminds us annually that after our sins have been forgiven through the sacrifice of Jesus Christ, we are not to remain in sin, but to work diligently to put all sinful thoughts, attitudes and actions out of our lives.

The early spring harvest season (which comes in March – April) pictures the very first of the firstfruits. And the first of the firstfruits was Jesus Christ, the only soul that has been harvested for God's kingdom during the first 6,000 years of man’s history. And that was pictured by the wave sheaf offering ceremony during the Days of Unleavened Bread.  That ceremony is described in Leviticus 23:10-11: “10 "Speak to the children of Israel, and say to them: 'When you come into the land which I give to you, and reap its harvest, then you shall bring a sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest to the priest. 11 He shall wave the sheaf before the Lord, to be accepted on your behalf; on the day after the Sabbath the priest shall wave it.”

**3) Feast of Pentecost**

The only annual feast during the second harvest season, the late spring harvest season, is called the Feast of Pentecost, also known as the Feast of Firstfruits. On this day in 31 A.D., God's holy spirit was first given to a group of disciples to begin God’s New Testament Church.

The firstfruits are the first agricultural products that mature and ripen. This feast, therefore, pictures the calling out by God of a few people during the first 6,000 years of man’s history, granting His holy spirit to enable them to understand His laws and live a righteous life in order to qualify to receive eternal life through a resurrection at Jesus Christ's second coming. The firstfruits will then reign with Jesus Christ for 1,000 years in God’s kingdom.

Only the firstfruits are being called and judged to qualify to be harvested for God's kingdom at this time. The rest of humanity is not being called at this time and will get its chance for eternal life later.

The Feast of Pentecost, therefore, teaches us that this is not the only time for salvation.  In fact, only a relatively few are receiving their chance for salvation during the first 6,000 years of man's history. Calling of the relatively few as the firstfruits is perfectly pictured by the smaller spring harvest. Most of humanity will be called later, as pictured by the much greater autumn harvest.

This Feast is celebrated during the months of May – June every year.

**4) The Feast of Trumpets**

Now we come to the annual Feasts of the third harvest season, the greater autumn harvest season, celebrated during the months of September – October. Four Feasts are celebrated during this season. All these four feasts are about the kingdom of God and its establishment. The first of the autumn feasts is the Feast of Trumpets.

This Feast teaches us that Jesus Christ will return to earth in great power and glory to take over the kingdoms of the world. Also at this time, the firstfruits – those who are called from the time of the creation of Adam to the return of Jesus Christ – will be resurrected as immortal spirit beings and will reign with Jesus Christ in His kingdom.

**5) The Day of Atonement**

The next Feast during the autumn holy day season is called the Day of Atonement. This festival teaches us the need for humanity to be reconciled to God through the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ for the sins of all mankind. It also pictures Jesus Christ as our High Priest interceding for us with God the Father.

This feast teaches us that true reconciliation with God is not possible until the author of all of humanity's sins, which is Satan the devil, is put away. Therefore, the Day of Atonement also pictures the putting away of Satan for 1,000 years during the reign of Jesus Christ, after all of humanity's sins have been laid on his head, as symbolically pictured by the ceremony described in Leviticus 16:20-24, 26 in which the high priest laid the sins of the people on the Azazel goat [which pictures Satan] and released the goat in an uninhabited wilderness.

This festival is celebrated by fasting for 24 hours to draw closer to God, to picture the reconciliation of mankind to Him.

**6) Feast of Tabernacles**

The seven-day Feast of Tabernacles represents the next step in God's master plan for salvation of mankind and pictures the 1,000 year reign of Jesus Christ on earth as King of kings and Lord of lords (Revelation 19:11-16; 20:4; Matthew 17:1-4; Hebrews 11:8-9), assisted by the resurrected, immortal saints. God's kingdom will establish a new, perfect society, ruled according to God's laws, beginning at Jerusalem and then spreading out to all nations.

God's commandments, laws and ways will be taught throughout the earth. Unlike in our time, during the millennium, each and every human being living will be called by God and receive his or her chance for salvation. Therefore, this feast represents the greater harvest of souls for God's kingdom. Satan and the demons will be imprisoned so that they can deceive the nations no more during the 1,000 years. God's rule will usher in an era of universal peace, prosperity, abundance, happiness and joy (Isaiah 2:2-4; Daniel 2:35, 44; 7:13-14).

**7) The Last Great Day**

The seventh feast called the eighth day or the Last Great Day of the Feast teaches us that after the 1,000 year reign of Jesus Christ, God will offer a chance for salvation to each and every human being who has ever lived and died without being called by God.

All such human beings will be raised from the dead as physical human beings and called by God. They will have their minds opened to understand the truth of the gospel message. They will be given sufficient time (100 years, Isaiah 65:20) to repent and qualify to receive eternal life. It thus pictures a time of the greatest harvest of souls for God's kingdom.

We thus see that each holy day season represents an ever-increasing harvest of souls for God's kingdom. The Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread during the early spring harvest represented only Jesus Christ receiving eternal life; just one soul being harvested for the kingdom of God, as the first of the firstfruits. The Feast of Pentecost during the late spring harvest season represents the firstfruits being harvested for the kingdom of God during the first 6,000 years of man's history, from the creation of Adam to the return of Jesus Christ. During this time perhaps people in the hundreds of thousands or a few million will have qualified to receive eternal life. The Feast of Tabernacles and the Last Great Day during the autumn harvest season represent the greatest harvest of souls for God's kingdom with tens of billions qualifying to receive eternal life.

**The Fate of Those Who Refuse to Repent**

Although God will in His great mercy extend the opportunity for salvation to every human being born, some will still refuse to repent and accept God’s way of life. What is their fate?

The Bible reveals that, rather than be tortured forever in an ever-burning hell, their lives will simply be permanently extinguished. They will cease to exist, and will be as though they had never been.

Revelation 20:15 reveals that, after the final judgment depicted by the Last Great Day, "anyone not found written in the Book of Life was cast into the lake of fire."

Revelation 21:8 adds, "But the cowardly, unbelieving, abominable, murderers, sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars shall have their part in the lake which burns with fire and brimstone, which is the second death."

These verses make absolutely clear that the fate of the incorrigible is clearly death, not eternal life of torture. Their lives will be extinguished forever. Even their memory that they ever existed will be forgotten.

Paul also made it plain that the punishment of the wicked is death. He states in Romans 6:23: "For the wages of sin is death…" Malachi the prophet also described the fate of the incorrigibly wicked in Malachi 4:1-3: "'For behold, the day is coming, burning like an oven, and all the proud, yes, all who do wickedly will be stubble. And the day which is coming shall burn them up,' says the Lord of hosts, 'that will leave them neither root nor branch. But to you who fear My name the Sun of Righteousness shall arise with healing in His wings; and you shall go out and grow fat like stall-fed calves. You shall trample the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet on the day that I do this,' says the Lord of hosts."

The fate of Satan and the demons is indicated in Ezekiel 28:18-19: “18 You [that is Satan] have defiled your sanctuaries by the multitude of your iniquities, by the iniquity of your traffic; therefore will I bring forth a fire from the midst of you, it shall devour you, and I will bring you to ashes upon the earth in the sight of all them that behold you. 19 All they that know you among the people shall be astonished at you: you shalt be a terror, and never shall you be any more.”

A normal fire that can consume human beings and material things does not consume spirit beings like Satan and the demons. But God will prepare a special fire that will consume Satan and the demons as well with the rest of humanity that failed to repent.  This is mentioned in Matthew 25:41: “41Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.”

All those who were called during the first 6,000 years of man’s history but failed to qualify to receive eternal life, and died, will have to be physically resurrected to then be burnt alive in the Lake of Fire. This is the third resurrection. Daniel 12:2 describes it this way: “2 And many of them that sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life [during the first resurrection at the return of Jesus Christ], and some to shame and everlasting contempt” [after the 100 years of the White Throne Judgment are complete].

The third resurrection is not called the third resurrection by name. But with a clear understanding of the sequence of the resurrections and their purpose, it is evident that the third resurrection will be a resurrection to physical life for humans.

Revelation 20 mentions all the 3 resurrections. The first two resurrections have already been described. Verses 12-15 state; “12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. 13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it [these would be those who drowned in Noah’s Flood as well as the who perished in voyages through the seas and oceans]; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. 14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. 15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the Lake of fire.”

Verses 12-13 describe the second resurrection to physical life. The dead who are made alive are judged according to their works (meaning how they live their lives) by what is written in the books of the Bible to finally have their names either written in the Book of Life or excluded from it. At the end of the 100 years of the White Throne Judgment, those who by their conduct fail to qualify to have their names written in the Book of Life will be cast into the Lake of Fire. They had died a physical death earlier which was the first death. After being cast into the Lake of Fire they die the second death which is permanent. These people are still living after the second resurrection. But in the third resurrection will be the very small number of people who received their chance for eternal life during man’s first 6,000 years of history, and during the 1,000 years of God’s kingdom, but failed to qualify to have their names written in the Book of Life. They are the ones who are resurrected in the third resurrection, called the resurrection ‘to shame and everlasting contempt’ in Daniel 12:2. These along with those from the second resurrection who are still alive are left standing on earth when the earth is set ablaze to consume it. They together die the second permanent death in this Lake of Fire.

Burning up of the incorrigibly unrepentant in the Lake of Fire completes God’s plan of salvation for humanity as depicted by God’s seven annual holy days.

**A New Beginning With A New Heaven and a New Earth**

As the wicked are consumed, the fire continues to burn and purify the earth, as written in II Peter 3:7, 10-12 (NKJV): “But the heavens and the earth which now exist are kept in store by the same word, reserved for fire until the day of judgment and perdition of ungodly men…But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with a great noise, and the elements will melt with fervent heat; both the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up.”

After the entire earth is burnt up and consumed in this fire, the next event to occur will be a new earth and new heavens. This is prophesied in Revelation 21:1-3 (NKJV): “And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away. Also there was no more sea. Then I, John, saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.  And I heard a loud voice from heaven saying, “Behold, the tabernacle of God is with men, and He will dwell with them, and they shall be His people, and God Himself will be with them and be their God. And God will wipe away every tear from their eyes; there shall be no more death, nor sorrow, nor crying; and there shall be no more pain, for the former things have passed away.”

The New Earth with the new holy city, the New Jerusalem, will no longer need oceans and seas to sustain physical life because only spirit beings, the immortal sons of God, will inhabit it from then on. God the Father will also dwell among them.

The apostle Peter also mentioned the new heavens and the new earth in II Peter 3:13: “Nevertheless we, according to His promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwells righteousness.”

Isaiah also mentions the new heavens and the new earth in 65:17-19, 66:22: “For behold, I create new heavens and a new earth; and the former shall not be remembered or come to mind. But be glad and rejoice forever in what I create…”

**God’s Purpose in Creating Humanity**

Perhaps now we can understand God’s great purpose in creating mankind in His own image as explained by Mr. Herbert W. Armstrong through whom God founded the modern era of His true Church.

God first created the angels. Three angels of apparently the highest rank of archangels were Lucifer, Michael and Gabriel. After they had learnt God’s way of life and government, God then created the earth and the rest of the material universe. He then sent one third of the angels under the leadership of Lucifer to earth to finish its creation.

Ezekiel 28:12-15 (NKJV) describes Lucifer this way: “Thus says the Lord God: "You were the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. 13 You were in Eden, the garden of God; every precious stone was your covering: the sardius, topaz, and diamond, beryl, onyx, and jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and emerald with gold. The workmanship of your timbrels and pipes was prepared for you on the day you were created. 14 "You were the anointed cherub who covers; I established you; you were on the holy mountain of God; you walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones. 15 You were perfect in your ways from the day you were created, till iniquity was found in you.”

Thus God created Lucifer a perfect spirit being, but he apparently led one third of all the angels who were under his command to rebellion against God. Then God saw that He could create a perfect being with incredible talents, but He could not create perfect holy righteous character in that being by fiat.

Mr. Armstrong writes in his book “*Mystery of the Ages*” p. 101:

“Character cannot be automatically created by fiat. Godly spiritual character is the habitual action and conduct of the person or created entity to come to knowledge of the true ways of God, and to exercise the will to follow those ways even against opposition, temptation or self-desire to the contrary. Character must be developed with the assent, will and action of the separately created entity. It is imparted by God and must be willingly received by that entity.”

When Lucifer and the angels under his command rebelled against God, they demonstrated that they had not developed perfect, holy and righteous character.  Otherwise they would not have rebelled against God and His government. Mr. Armstrong continues on pages 93-95:

“As God surveyed this cataclysmic tragedy [the destruction of the earth and other parts of the universe caused by Satan’s rebellion], He must have realized that since the highest, most perfect being [Lucifer who became Satan]…had turned to rebellion, it left God himself as the only being who would not and cannot sin…

“God saw that no being less than God, in the God family [currently with only two members in it – God the Father and Jesus Christ as the Son], could be certainly relied on to never sin. To fulfill His purpose for the entire vast universe [which was to finish its creation by beautifying it], God saw that nothing less than himself (as the God family) could be absolutely relied upon to carry out that purpose in the entire universe.

“God then purposed to reproduce himself, through humans, made in his image and likeness, but made first from material flesh and blood, subject to death if there is sin unrepented of – yet with the possibility of being born into the divine family begotten by God the Father…And that is why God put man on earth.”

Mr. Armstrong writes on p. 103:

“Man was [is] to improve the physical earth as God gave it to him, finishing its creation (which sinning angels had deliberately refused to do) and, in so doing to RESTORE THE GOVERNMENT OF GOD, with God’s way of life; and further, in this very process FINISHING THE CREATION OF MAN by the development of God’s holy, righteous CHARACTER, with man’s own assent.

“Once this perfect and righteous character is instilled in man, and man converted from mortal flesh to immortal spirit, then is to come the INCREDIBLE HUMAN POTENTIAL – man being born into the divine family of God, restoring the government of God to the earth, and then participating in the completion of the creation over the entire endless expanse of the universe… [Thus] God shall have reproduced Himself untold millions of times over.”

God says in 2 Corinthians 6:18: “I will be a Father to you, and you shall be My sons and daughters, says the Lord Almighty.” God always means what He says, and has the power to accomplish what He says.

John the apostle also wrote 1 John 3:2: “Beloved, now we are the children of God; and it has not yet been revealed what we shall be, but we know that when He is revealed, we shall be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is.”

Thus our human potential is to be born into God’s divine family as His literal sons and daughters, with a spirit body like His, and rule the entire universe with Him.

**Next Colonize the Entire Universe**

Here is proof that we shall rule the entire universe.

God has promised all things, meaning the entire universe, to those who overcome and became His immortal sons and daughters. This is stated in Revelation 21:7 (NKJV): “7 He who overcomes shall INHERIT ALL THINGS, and I will be his God and he shall be My son.”

Hebrews 2:6-8 (NKJV) also states: “6 But one testified in a certain place, saying: "What is man that You are mindful of him, or the son of man that You take care of him? 7 You have made him a little lower than the angels; You have crowned him with glory and honor, and set him over the works of Your hands. 8 You have put ALL THINGS in subjection under his feet." For in that He put all in subjection under him, He left nothing that is not put under him.”

The picture is quite clear. The New Jerusalem will be the center of the universe where God will dwell with all His immortal sons and daughters. But they will not be confined to the earth. They will have inherited all things from God the Father and Jesus Christ, meaning the entire physical universe to work with and rule. God will have set His immortal sons and daughters over all the works of His hands that He has created.

God said through Isaiah the prophet about the earth in Isaiah 45:18: “For thus says the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he has established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the Lord; and there is none else.” If God created the earth to be inhabited, He certainly would not have created more than 100 billion stars with their planets in each galaxy with more than 100 billion galaxies in the universe to lie waste and empty. He created them to be inhabited at some time like the earth.

Thus after God’s plan of salvation for mankind is complete, and human beings have become literal immortal sons of God with God the Father dwelling among them, there will be a new beginning. What has been accomplished on earth, God’s sons will then accomplish in the rest of the universe, which Satan and the demons disqualified from doing. They will have proved to God the Father that even when they are sent to the remotest corner of the universe, they will not rebel against Him as Satan and the demons did after they were sent away from heaven to rule the earth. God’s sons and daughters will administer God’s government throughout the universe.

God actually prophesied through Moses that God will allot the universe to humans become immortal in Deuteronomy 4:19 (NKJV), “19 And take heed, lest you lift your eyes to heaven, and when you see the sun, the moon, and the stars, all the host of heaven, you feel driven to worship them and serve them, which the Lord your God has given to all the peoples under the whole heaven as a heritage.”

These things cannot be imagined by our limited minds but God has revealed them to members of His Church through His holy spirit as Paul declared in 1 Corinthians 2:9-10 (NKJV): "Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love Him. 10 But God has revealed them to us through His Spirit."

**Catastrophes Before Establishment of God’s Kingdom**

We are now living in the very end of the end times. The world is about to explode into the Third World War with Germany, China and most of India allied against America, British Commonwealth nations and the Jewish state of Israel. One fourth of mankind, or more than 1.85 billion people will lose their lives in this word war and its aftermath of famines and disease epidemics. But that is only the beginning of sorrows as Jesus prophesied in Matthew 24:3-8, “3 Now as He sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying, “Tell us, when will these things be? And what will be the sign of Your coming, and of the end of the age?”4 And Jesus answered and said to them: “Take heed that no one deceives you. 5 For many will come in My name, saying, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will deceive many. 6 And you will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not troubled; for all these things must come to pass, but the end is not yet. 7 For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. And there will be famines, pestilences, and earthquakes in various places. 8 All these are the beginning of sorrows.”

The precise sequence of events is provided in the book of Revelation as the messages contained in the seven seals. The world war is mentioned in the Four Horsemen of the Apocalypse prophecy, the end result of the war is mentioned in Revelation 6:8, “…And power was given unto them [the four horsemen] over the fourth part of the earth, to kill with sword, and with hunger, and with death, and with the beasts of the earth.”

The Third World War will be followed by the three-and-a-half year long Great Tribulation, which is the time of unprecedented trouble for the British, American and Jewish people as a result of defeat in war and national slavery. After two and a half years of slavery, three more world wars are prophesied to occur within one year resulting in the destruction of much of the world’s population. The precise sequence of end-time events in described in detail in my booklet *“World in Bible Prophecy,”* available free at my website www.ChurchofGodMessage.com. A 15-page brief version is also available at my website titled *“Summary of Sequence of End-Time Events”*.

**There is a Way of Escape**

Jesus Christ described the Great Tribulation as a time when the world will be brought to the brink of total annihilation. He said in Matthew 24:21-22, “21 For then there will be great tribulation, such as has not been since the beginning of the world until this time, no, nor ever shall be. 22 And unless those days were shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the elect’s sake those days will be shortened.”

We have used only the sure words of prophecy (2 Peter 1:19: “19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto you do well that you take heed, as unto a light that shines in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts”) to show what will happen in the world in the very near future. These words come straight from the Bible, describing the horrors the world will soon be plunged into. But there is a way of escape from these catastrophic events.

Only one group in the world is promised protection throughout the entire three and a half years of the coming Great Tribulation: members of God’s true Church with the Philadelphian attitude as described in Revelation 3:7-11 (NKJV), “' 7 "And to the angel of the church in Philadelphia write: 8 I know your works. See, I have set before you an open door, and no one can shut it; for you have a little strength, have kept My word, and have not denied My name…10 Because you have kept My command to persevere, I ALSO WILL KEEP YOU FROM THE HOUR OF TRIAL WHICH SHALL COME UPON THE WHOLE WORLD, to test those who dwell on the earth. 11 Behold, I am coming quickly! Hold fast what you have, that no one may take your crown.”

Millions of others besides members of God’s Church will survive, as mentioned in Revelation 7:8-17, but after having experienced the horrors of the first two and a half years of the Great Tribulation, “9 After this I beheld, and, lo, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb [another name for Jesus Christ], clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands; 10 And cried with a loud voice, saying, Salvation to our God which sits upon the throne, and unto the Lamb. 11 And all the angels stood round about the throne, and about the elders and the four beasts, and fell before the throne on their faces, and worshipped God, 12 Saying, Amen: Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honor, and power, and might, be unto our God for ever and ever. Amen. 13 And one of the elders answered, saying unto me, What are these which are arrayed in white robes? and whence came they? 14 And I said unto him, Sir, you know. And he said to me, These are they which came out of great tribulation, and have washed their robes, and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. 15 Therefore are they before the throne of God, and serve him day and night in his temple: and he that sits on the throne shall dwell among them. 16 They shall hunger no more, neither thirst any more; neither shall the sun light on them, nor any heat. 17 For the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne shall feed them, and shall lead them unto living fountains of waters: and God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes.”

But when the 7.4 billion population of the world is taken into consideration, the percentage surviving may be 2-5% or less. Those are very poor odds of surviving the troubles that lie ahead. The best chances of survival are promised for members of God’s Church as described above, who keep God’s word, meaning all His commandments and doctrines, have not denied that they worship the true Jesus Christ of the Bible, persevere in doing God’s work of warning the world of the coming catastrophes, proclaiming the most wonderful news of the return of Jesus Christ to earth and the establishment of the Kingdom of God, and endure to the very end while diligently doing these things. I have described it in my book *"The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-Time Catastrophes"* available free at my web site.

God has laid before us the choice He offers to all human beings. But each and every human being must individually choose and take action. So the choice to become members of God’s Church and do God’s work in order to receive guaranteed protection during the Great Tribulation, or stay in the world and watch along as events unfold and engulf everyone is entirely yours.

**How you can Join God’s True Church**

If you would like to become members of God’s true Church, you must first learn more about God's way of life and then make your choice. You can do so by reading the literature published by the United Church of God. Two small United Church of God booklets that could be read in a total of about 2-3 hours explain what steps an individual must take to receive God’s free gift of eternal life, and what the fundamental beliefs of the true Church of God are. These booklets are titled “The Road to Eternal Life” and “Fundamental Beliefs of the United Church of God.”

All literature is offered free of charge upon request by the United Church of God. It can also be read online, or downloaded free at the Church's web site www.ucg.org. You can also write to the United Church of God at: United Church of God, Post Office Box 541027, Cincinnati, OH 45254, USA. In the USA you can also request literature on the phone by calling toll free at 1-888-886-8632, or from anywhere in the world at 1-513-576-9796. You may also request a free subscription to our monthly magazine “Beyond Today” at www.ucg.org.

The Church also has ministers available almost everywhere in the world to answer any questions you may have or counsel for baptism to become a member of God's true Church.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

CHAPTER 16

**ANSWERS TO SOME IMPORTANT QUESTIONS**

Churches of God have written excellent booklets on the subjects “Does God exist? and “Which is true: Evolution or creation?” Anyone can access the free resources available at www.beyondtoday.com; www.ucg.org, www.pcog.org; www.rcg.org and www.lcg.org, the respective web sites for United Church of God, Philadelphia Church of God, Restored Church of God and the Living Church of God. All literature provided by the Churches of God is always free of charge and without any obligation.

Why then did I choose to write this book? There are two main reasons. I come from a non-Judeo-Christian background. All on my father’s side are Sikhs and all on my mother’s side are Hindus. I belong to two WhatsApp groups of my former colleagues who graduated in my engineering degree batch from the Indian Institute of Technology Delhi (IITD), and who graduated with an MBA from the Indian Institute of Management Calcutta (now Kolkata) (IIMC), India. There was a vigorous discussion in the IITD group on the subject of evolution, the right religion and whether God exists. Some very interesting questions were raised in those discussions. I was motivated to write this book to address those questions that are not answered in the Churches of God literature, particularly concerning other religions.

The second reason was that people from other religions with a bias against Christianity may not be motivated to visit the Church of God web sites and read or request the literature provided there. Just as I thought before my conversion to Christianity from Sikhism that a Church web site will contain Christian propaganda to convert people, people from other religions will probably have a similar bias. But because of my criticism of virtually every religion, some people may be motivated to read this book on my web site. Therefore, I felt it was necessary for me to write it and put it on my web site.

Many of the questions posed in the WhatsApp group have been answered in the body of this book. I will answer some of the remaining questions here briefly.

**1. Christians Believe the Earth is only 6,000 Years Old**

There are some Christians who believe the earth was created only about 6,000 years ago based on the creation account in Genesis 1:1-3, “1In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. 2 The earth was without form, and void; and darkness was on the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters. 3 Then God said, “Let there be light”; and there was light. 4 And God saw the light, that it was good; and God divided the light from the darkness. 5 God called the light Day, and the darkness He called Night. So the evening and the morning were the first day.” Then the account goes on to describe the creation of plant and animal life, and finally man.

Many scholars have looked at verse 2 and agree that the correct translation of verse 2 should be: “The earth became without form, and void; and darkness was on the face of the deep…”

Here is what else is revealed about the history of the earth. Job 38:1-7 states, “1 Then the Lord answered Job out of the whirlwind, and said…4 Where were you when I laid the foundations of the earth? declare, if you have understanding…7 When the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy?”

The morning stars and sons of God here refers to angels. So when God created the heavens and the earth as stated in Genesis 1:1, the angels shouted for joy. Would the angels have shouted for joy if the earth had been without form and void, a chaotic mess, enveloped in darkness, with water covering the entire surface of the earth? It does not make sense.

God said in Isaiah 45:18, “For thus says the Lord that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he has established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the Lord; and there is none else.”

Her God declares that He created the earth to be inhabited. The condition of the earth described in Genesis 1:2 shows that the earth was uninhabitable at that stage. That leads us to conclude that God created the earth to be inhabitable. It was created for angels to work with. That’s why they shouted for joy.

God then sent a pioneering party of about one-third of all the angels under the leadership of the archangel Lucifer, one of the three highest ranking angels, to earth to rule it. They worked on the earth and created their own creation. And that creation was the dinosaur world. That process could have gone on for millions or billions of years. It would have taken a great deal of time for the angels to explore the newly, first time ever, created matter, and then use it ti create plant live and living creatures.

But then Lucifer convinced all the angels under his command to join him in rebellion against God to try and depose God and take over the rule of the universe. That process also could have taken millions of years. The rebellion was unsuccessful. In a fit of rage and frustration, Lucifer and the angels with him perhaps went on a rampage in parts of the universe. That’s why we see much destruction on other planets, and perhaps in other parts of the universe in addition to our solar system. The chaotic state of the earth described in Genesis 1:2 was a result of that rebellion. That is why the correct translation of verse 2 is “The earth became without form, and void…” Thus, there could be a gap of hundreds of millions or billions of years (your choice) between verses 1 and 2 of Genesis 1.

After the unsuccessful rebellion Lucifer was named Satan, meaning adversary of God, and the angels became demons. They were blasted back to the earth.

The scientists who believe the earth is billions of years old are not wrong. The biblical record agrees with science in this regard.

It is important to understand who these biblical scholars are who claim that the earth was created only about 6,000 - 10,000 years ago. These are people (German masqueraders) who have infiltrated Christianity to try and overthrow the faith of some from the inside. They try and knock down Christianity from the outside by posing as atheists or evolutionists, or from the inside by infiltrating Christian organizations and offering endless arguments on some aspects of Christianity. Their criticism of Christianity will never end. They’ll keep inventing new arguments when their old arguments have been pulverized.

**2. Carbon Dating Proves Mankind is at Least 20,000 Years Old**

I am not an expert on carbon dating. But the Bible record clearly tells us that Adam was created about 6,000 years ago. The line of Adam’s son Seth kept genealogical records of their line with the number of years various patriarchs lived. There are no other written records older than that. The oldest written records are considered to be the cuneiform Sumerian clay tablets from about 3,200 BCE.

God created Adam and Eve with the ability to communicate. They did not have to develop a language. Since they kept written records of their genealogies and the years various people lived, they had the ability to write as well. God put that ability within them. So the earliest written records we have are only about 5,200 years old. Based on this evidence, I’d rather believe the biblical record on how old mankind is than the age of mankind determined by carbon dating.

Here is a good explanation I have found on why carbon dating can be in error on the website:

https://www.allaboutarchaeology.org/is-carbon-dating-accurate-faq.htm

“Is carbon dating accurate? Only to a certain extent. In order for carbon dating to be accurate, we must know what the ratio of carbon-12 to carbon-14 was in the environment in which our specimen lived during its lifetime. Unfortunately, the ratio of carbon-12 to carbon-14 has yet to reach a state of equilibrium in our atmosphere; there is more carbon-14 in the air today than there was thousands of years ago. Furthermore, the ratio is known to fluctuate significantly over relatively short periods of time (e.g. during the industrial revolution more carbon-12 was being produced offsetting the ratio a bit).

“Carbon dating is somewhat accurate because we are able to determine what the ratio was in the unobservable past to a certain extent. By taking a carboniferous specimen of known age (that is, a specimen which we are able to date with reasonable certainty through some archaeological means), scientists are able to determine what the ratio was during a specimen's lifetime. They are then able to calibrate the carbon dating method to produce fairly accurate results. Carbon dating is thus accurate within the timeframe set by other archaeological dating techniques. Unfortunately, we aren't able to reliably date artifacts beyond several thousand years. Scientists have tried to extend confidence in the carbon dating method further back in time by calibrating the method using tree ring dating. Unfortunately, tree ring dating is itself not entirely reliable, especially the "long chronology" employed to calibrate the carbon dating method. The result is that carbon dating is accurate for only a few thousand years. Anything beyond that is questionable. This fact is born out in how carbon dating results are used by scientists in the scientific literature. Many scientists will use carbon dating test results to back up their position if the results agree with their preconceived theories. But if the carbon dating results actually conflict with their ideas, they aren't too concerned. "This attitude is clearly reflected in a regrettably common practice: when a radiocarbon date agrees with the expectations of the excavator it appears in the main text of the site report; if it is slightly discrepant it is relegated to a footnote; if it seriously conflicts it is left out altogether." (Peter James, et al. (I. J. Thorpe, Nikos Kokkinos, Robert Morkot and John Frankish), *Preface to Centuries of Darkness*, 1991)

“So, is carbon dating accurate? It is for specimens which only date back a few thousand years. Anything beyond that is problematic and highly doubtful.”

Many will offer counterarguments to this. But I will not put my bets on fallible science. Everything man touches, invariably degenerates, particularly food. Man thinks he is improving seeds and plants with genetic engineering. But all the evidence tells us that after 3-4 successive crops with decreasing yields, the genetically modified seeds will not even grow a crop. I’d rather believe what the Bible says, which we have proved is the infallible word of God, rather than what science says that is contrary to the biblical record.

**3. Opinion of Jesus, Prophets and Apostles about the Bible**

Here are the opinions of Jesus Christ, the prophets, apostles and even the angels of God that the entire Bible is the divinely inspired word of God.

Jesus said in Matthew 24:35: “Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My words shall not pass away.” Jesus also said in John 17:17: “…your word is truth.” So, Jesus emphatically said that God’s word, the Old Testament in the Bible (which is what was available as scripture when Jesus Christ was alive) is the truth.

Jesus also said in Matthew 5:17-18: “Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. For verily [or assuredly] I say unto you, till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle [the equivalent of a fullstop or a coma as punctuation marks] shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.” “The law or the prophets” was a term applied for the Old Testament. Here Jesus was saying that everything written in the Old Testament, including punctuation marks, will be fulfilled. Therefore, it is the truth backed by Almighty God.

When Jesus was arrested before His crucifixion, He said in Matthew 26:54, 56: “But how then shall the scriptures be fulfilled, that thus it must be?…But all this was done, that the scriptures of the prophets might be fulfilled. Then all the disciples forsook Him, and fled.” This shows that Jesus knew that the Jews possessed the correct Scriptures in the Temple and all synagogues, which were exact copies of the ones in the Temple.

This was confirmed in Luke 24:44-45, “And He said unto them, These are the words which I spoke unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning Me. Then opened He their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures”

The law of Moses, the prophets and the psalms referred to the canonized Old Testament Hebrew Scriptures. Jesus confirmed that they were the inspired word of God, containing many prophecies concerning Him, which were fulfilled.

The disciples were slow to understand the events concerning Jesus’ crucifixion and Resurrection. He said to them in Luke 24:25-27: “O fools, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken: ought not Christ to have suffered these things, and to enter into His glory? And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, He expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning Himself” (Luke 24:25-27).

Jesus also said in John 10:35: “If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken.”

Here Jesus was saying that the scriptures cannot be broken, meaning that the scriptures are infallible. By the time of Jesus, the Old Testament scriptures had been written and preserved for a time period varying from more than 1450 years when Moses delivered his first 5 books of the Bible to about 450 years since Malachi the prophet wrote his book. Jesus thus confirmed that the Old Testament had been faithfully preserved by the Jews till His time.

Incidentally, since we have stated that man’s potential is to become gods as sons and daughters of God, Jesus affirmed it in John 10:30 - 36, “30 I and my Father are one. 31 Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him. 32 Jesus answered them, Many good works have I showed you from my Father; for which of those works do you stone me? 33 The Jews answered him, saying, For a good work we do not stone you; but for blasphemy; and because that you, being a man, make yourself God. 34 Jesus answered them, Is it not written in your law, I said, you are gods? [Psalm 82:6] 35 If he called them gods, unto whom the word of God came, and the scripture cannot be broken; 36 Say you of him, whom the Father has sanctified, and sent into the world, You blaspheme; because I said, I am the Son of God?”

Here is what the prophet Daniel thought of the scriptures: “But I [this is probably the archangel Gabriel talking to Daniel] will show you that which is noted in the scripture of truth…” (Daniel 10:21). Daniel recorded what was revealed to him, because he knew it was the truth.

Thus, even the archangels of God call the scriptures truth.

The angels of God also keep the sayings of the Bible. The angel that was revealing parts of chapters 21 and 22 of the book of Revelation to the Apostle John said in Revelation 22:6-9: “6 And he said unto me, These sayings are faithful and true: and the Lord God of the holy prophets sent his angel to show unto his servants the things which must shortly be done. 7 Behold, I come quickly: blessed is he that keeps the sayings of the prophecy of this book. 8 And I John saw these things, and heard them. And when I had heard and seen, I fell down to worship before the feet of the angel which showed me these things. 9 Then says he unto me, See you do it not: for I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren the prophets, and of them which keep the sayings of this book: worship God.”

When the prophecies in the Book of Revelation were revealed to John, all other books of the Bible had already been written and the final compilation already done by John the Apostle. So, when the angel said that he was a fellow servant like the prophets and kept the sayings of this book, he also signified that the canonization of books that John had done were also scripture. So, the angel signified that the New Testament of the Bible had been completed, and he as an angel of God kept the sayings of the entire Bible as they were faithful and true. As the angel had signified to Daniel the prophet that the Old Testament scriptures were the truth, the angel was now signifying to John the apostle that the New Testament that he had finally canonized with the book of Revelation was the truth and even he as an angel of God lived by its words. Besides Jesus Christ, what greater testimony can we have than that of God’s angels that the entire Bible is the true word of God?

The apostle Paul told Timothy in 2 Timothy 3:16-17: “All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: that the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.” The literal translation in place of ‘inspiration of God’ is “God-breathed.” So according to Paul, the entire Bible is God breathed, or inspired by God.

In Romans 1:2 Paul calls the scriptures ‘holy.’

Peter the apostle shows in 2 Peter 1:20-21 that God had an active hand in the writing of the Bible. He said that “No prophecy [which means ‘inspired speaking or writing’] of Scripture ever came by the will of man. Instead, holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.”

Thus, from the words of Jesus, the prophets, the apostles and even God’s angels, the scriptures, the entire Holy Bible is the true, inspired and infallible word of God.

**DOES GOD EXIST?**

**Suggested Reading**

The following books and booklets are available free of charge to order, read online or download at the indicated websites of the various Churches of God:

1.  “Life’s Ultimate Question: Does God Exist?”, published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.
2. “Creation or Evolution: Does it Really Matter What you Believe?”, published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.
3. “Does God Exist?”, published by the Restored Church of God, available at www.rcg.org.
4.  "God’s Holy Day Plan: The Promise of Hope for All Mankind," at www.ucg.org
5.  "The Road to Eternal Life," at www.ucg.org
6.  “Jesus Christ: The Real Story”, at www.ucg.org
7.  "The United States and Britain in Prophecy;" by Herbert W. Armstrong, available at www.pcog.org.
8.  "The United States and Britain in Bible Prophecy;" published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.
9.  "The Throne of Britain: Its Biblical Origin and Future," eBook published by the United Church of God, available at www.ucg.org.
10. "America and Britain in Prophecy," by David C. Pack; published by the Restored Church of God, available at www.rcg.org.
11. "The United States and Great Britain in Prophecy;" published by the Living Church of God, available at www.lcg.org.

The following books and booklets are available free at my web site www.ChurchofGodMessage.com

1.  “Summary of Sequence of End-Time Events,”
2.  “World in Bible Prophecy,”
3.  "Which Holy Book is the Word of God?”
4.  "Which Religion is True?”
5.  "The Only Guaranteed Way to Escape End-Time Catastrophes."